

CAMBRIDGE

مرجع زبان ایرانیان  
www.irLanguage.com

# English Vocabulary in Use

Pre-intermediate

Vocabulary reference  
and practice

With answers

B1

English  
Profile



CD-ROM



Third Edition

Stuart Redman

# English Vocabulary **in** **Use**

Pre-intermediate  
and intermediate

**THIRD  
EDITION**

*with answers  
and CD-ROM*

**Stuart Redman**



# Contents

Thanks and acknowledgements	5	<b>30</b> On the road	66
Introduction	6	<b>31</b> Notices and warnings	68
<b>Learning</b>		<b>Education and study</b>	
<b>1</b> Learning vocabulary	8	<b>32</b> Classroom language	70
<b>2</b> Keeping a vocabulary notebook	10	<b>33</b> School education	72
<b>3</b> Using a dictionary	12	<b>34</b> Studying English and taking exams	74
<b>4</b> English language words	14	<b>35</b> University education	76
<b>The world around us</b>		<b>Work and business</b>	
<b>5</b> Country, nationality and language	16	<b>36</b> Jobs	78
<b>6</b> The physical world	18	<b>37</b> Talking about your work	80
<b>7</b> Weather	20	<b>38</b> Making a career	82
<b>8</b> Animals and insects	22	<b>39</b> Working in an office	84
<b>People</b>		<b>40</b> Running a company	86
<b>9</b> The body and movement	24	<b>41</b> Business and finance	88
<b>10</b> Describing appearance	26	<b>Leisure and entertainment</b>	
<b>11</b> Describing character	28	<b>42</b> Sport and leisure	90
<b>12</b> Feelings	30	<b>43</b> Competitive sport	92
<b>13</b> Family and friends	32	<b>44</b> Books and films	94
<b>14</b> Growing up	34	<b>45</b> Music	96
<b>15</b> Romance, marriage and divorce	36	<b>46</b> Special events	98
<b>Daily life</b>		<b>Tourism</b>	
<b>16</b> Daily routines	38	<b>47</b> Air travel	100
<b>17</b> The place where you live	40	<b>48</b> Hotels and restaurants	102
<b>18</b> Around the home	42	<b>49</b> Sightseeing holidays	104
<b>19</b> Everyday problems	44	<b>50</b> Holidays by the sea	106
<b>20</b> Money	46		
<b>21</b> Health	48		
<b>22</b> Clothes	50		
<b>23</b> Fashion and buying clothes	52		
<b>24</b> Shopping	54		
<b>25</b> Food	56		
<b>26</b> Cooking	58		
<b>27</b> City life	60		
<b>28</b> Life in the country	62		
<b>29</b> Transport	64		



# Thanks and acknowledgements

For this third edition, I would particularly like to thank Julie Moore for her detailed and insightful comments on the manuscript while in preparation. At Cambridge University Press, I would like to thank the editorial team under Noirin Burke, and especially Tracy Griffin for her tireless work in editing a long and complex manuscript, Alyson Maskell for her editorial work and support, and Emily Hird for her overall supervision of the project and for carefully steering the book from its early stages through to production. Finally, I would like to thank Andy George and Jeanette Alfoldi in production, Lucy Fox for photo research, and Marcus Fletcher for proofreading.

I would also like to thank the teachers and students who participated in focus groups at the following institutions:

Anglia Ruskin University, Cambridge  
Cambridge Academy of English, Cambridge  
OISE, Cambridge  
Oxford English Centre, Oxford

This product is informed by English Profile. English Profile is a collaborative program to enhance the learning, teaching and assessment of English worldwide and its main funding partners are Cambridge University Press and Cambridge ESOL. The aim of English Profile is to create a 'profile' for English linked to the Common European Framework of Reference for Languages (CEF). English Profile outcomes will provide detailed information about the language that learners can be expected to demonstrate at each CEF level, offering a clear benchmark for learners' proficiency. For more information, please visit [www.englishprofile.org](http://www.englishprofile.org).

مرجع زبان ایرانیان  
[www.irLanguage.com](http://www.irLanguage.com)



## To the teacher

This book can be used in class or for self-study. It is intended for learners at the upper A2 level and B1 level on the Council of Europe scale, and teaches more than 2,000 words and phrases. The vocabulary is organised around common everyday topics, but also contains units on different aspects of language such as phrasal verbs, uncountable nouns and link words and phrases. These units provide key information about lexis, but also help to ensure that learners are exposed to the most important vocabulary for their level. The first four units are dedicated to aspects of vocabulary learning such as record keeping and dictionary use. The book has been written so that units can be studied in any order, but I recommend you look at these four study units first, as they provide learners with important advice about vocabulary learning in general.

Throughout the book, vocabulary items have been chosen for their usefulness in a wide range of everyday situations, and this task has been made easier by having access to the English Profile (EP). Forming part of a large research programme sponsored by the Council of Europe, the EP helps teachers and students identify the words or phrases that a learner can be expected to know at each level of the Common European Framework. The words and phrases have been selected using the Cambridge Learner Corpus, examination wordlists and classroom materials, and in this book the main focus is on words and phrases at the upper end of the A2 level and across the B1 level.

Much of the new vocabulary (on average about 25 items per unit) is presented through different types of text, and then explained immediately after the item appears, or in a separate glossary below the text; some words are presented in tables or lists, and contextualised in sentence examples; some of the new vocabulary is presented in pictures and diagrams.

The new vocabulary is then practised on the right-hand pages through a wide range of exercise types. These pages generally progress from easier to more difficult exercises, with items often tested receptively first, e.g. through a matching or grouping exercise, before moving on to more challenging productive exercises such as gap-fill texts or sentence transformations. In many units, the final exercise is called **Over to you**. This indicates a personalised exercise, in which learners have an opportunity to use some of the new vocabulary to talk about themselves, their lives and their country, and sometimes to express their own personal opinions. These make ideal classroom speaking activities for pairs or groups, but many of the exercises on the right-hand page can be adapted for speaking practice. For example, where there are short question and answer dialogues, students can first read the dialogues out loud, then one student can ask the questions, and their partner has to respond appropriately using target vocabulary from the unit, but without referring to the book.

There is a comprehensive Answer key at the back of the book, as well as an Index of all the vocabulary taught with a phonemic pronunciation guide and a unit reference to where each item appears.

Alongside this book, you can also use *Test Your Vocabulary in Use Pre-intermediate and intermediate*. This accompanying book provides tests on all the vocabulary from *English Vocabulary in Use Pre-intermediate*, and is an ideal way for you to revise the vocabulary with your students. After that, they will be ready to go on to *English Vocabulary in Use Upper-intermediate* by Michael McCarthy and Felicity O'Dell.

Find more resources for teachers at [www.cambridge.org/elt/inuse](http://www.cambridge.org/elt/inuse)

I hope you enjoy using this new edition.

**A** Using this book

It's a good idea to have a **routine** when you use this book [something you do often and usually in the same way]. For example:

- a weekly routine when you study a new unit for at least [not less than] 30–45 minutes;
- a daily routine when you revise that unit [study it again]. You may only need to revise for five or ten minutes each time.

1.1

*Over to you*

Write your answers.

- 1 How often can you spend at least half an hour or forty-five minutes on a unit?  
.....
- 2 How often can you revise? How much time can you spend when you revise? Where will you do it?  
.....

**B** Studying a new unit

When you are studying a unit for the first time, you need to be active when you are learning.

- With a new word or phrase, say **it aloud** [speak it so you can hear it], and repeat it to yourself **silently** [in your head, not speaking]. If you have the CD-ROM that goes with the book, use it to check the pronunciation.
- Use a **highlighter** pen to mark words you think are important or difficult.
- Write down new words and phrases in your notebook. (See Unit 2 for more information.)
- Always try to write an example sentence for new words. You can choose an example from this book or a dictionary, but an example from your own life will often help you to remember a word, e.g. *I shared a flat with an Australian girl when I was in London last year.*
- Do exercises in pencil, then you can **rub them out** (using a **rubber**) and do them again later. This is a good way to revise vocabulary.

1.2

*Over to you*

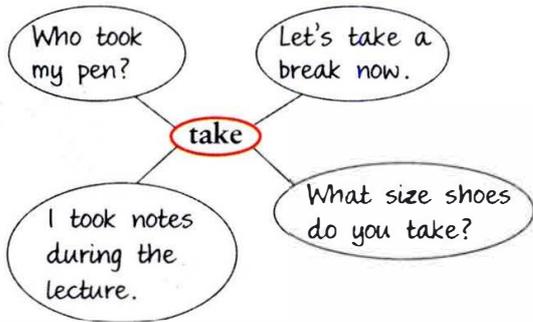
Write your answers.

- 1 Which of these things do you do now when you are learning vocabulary? .....
- 2 What will you do in the future? .....

**C** Revising a unit

When you are revising a unit one or two days later, it is also important to be as active as possible.

- Test yourself, e.g. look at a word and cover the meaning. Can you remember what the meaning is? If you can't, check the meaning, then come back to the word in five minutes' time and test yourself again.
- Look at what you wrote in your notebook when you first studied the unit. Is there any new information you want to add, e.g. something about the pronunciation, or a common word partner? (See Unit 2.)
- Diagrams may help you to organise some of the vocabulary differently, and help you to remember it.



**Over to you**

Write your answers.

- 1 Do you revise vocabulary that you study? If so, how often? .....
- 2 Will you try to revise more often in the future? If so, will you use some of the ideas above? .....

**D Expanding\* your vocabulary**

- When you learn a word, e.g. *dirty*, think of synonyms (*syn*) [words with a similar meaning] or opposites (*opp*) in your language. Look them up in a bilingual dictionary to find the English words, then look up the English words in an English dictionary to check the meaning. From this, you will find that the opposite of *dirty* is *clean*, and you may also find *filthy* [very dirty].  
\*making something bigger

**1.4 Using this method, find opposites for the words in bold.**

- 1 My room is very **clean**. *opp* dirty .....
- 2 It's a **permanent** job. *opp* .....
- 3 He was **kind** to all of his animals. *opp* .....
- 4 Babies have very **soft**, smooth skin. *opp* .....
- 5 Where's the **entrance**? *opp* .....
- 6 Was the bird **dead**? *opp* .....
- 7 Did they **accept** the invitation? *opp* .....

- Building word families (see Units 69–71) will also help to expand your vocabulary. From a noun, verb or adjective, you can often find related words in the dictionary with a similar meaning. So, you can often learn two or three words, and not just one, e.g. argue *v* = have an angry discussion; *n* = argument.

**1.5 Use a dictionary to find the related parts of speech for the words in bold.**

- 1 She gave me some **advice**. *verb* advise .....
- 2 We mustn't **argue**. *noun* .....
- 3 I will have to **revise** this unit. *noun* .....
- 4 Is there a **choice**? *verb* .....
- 5 I want to **expand** my vocabulary. *noun* .....
- 6 The two boys are very **different**. *noun* ..... *verb* .....
- 7 They need to **communicate** more. *noun* ..... *adj* .....

- Try to read and listen to English as much as possible. The more you read and listen, the more you will learn. When you read, try to:
  - **Highlight** or underline interesting new words
  - Highlight words if they are familiar but you can't remember the meaning.
- There is a lot of spoken English on the Internet which you can play again and again. Try to make a note of interesting words and look up the meaning.

**1.6**

**Over to you**

Now choose a unit that interests you. Study the left-hand page, then do the exercises in pencil. Wait for at least 24 hours, revise the unit, then answer these questions.

- 1 How many answers did you get right the first time? .....
- 2 How many answers did you get right the second time? .....

Study unit 2

# Keeping a vocabulary notebook

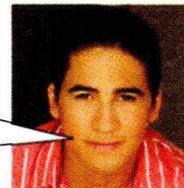
A

## What do you do?

This is what some students do.



I write down new English words and phrases in my notebook, and next to each one I write a Spanish translation. I usually write down if a word is a *noun*, *verb*, *adjective*, and so on.



RAFAEL



KAZUO

I sometimes write a word in phonemics because English pronunciation is very difficult for me. But my notebook is a mess [nothing is in a good order; *syn* untidy]. I like to draw pictures.



EUN



ANDREY

I sometimes make a note of new words in my notebook, but I often forget [don't remember]. I usually write a translation, and sometimes I write example sentences as well.

I've got a notebook. I don't use it much but when I do, I try and list words by topic, so I put all the animals together, and all the clothes words together, and so on. I find it's easier to remember the words this way.



DONATA

I note down new words and phrases. Sometimes I translate them into Polish, and sometimes I write an explanation [a description of what something means] in English if it is not difficult. For example: *kitten* a very young cat

B

## Tips for your notebook

A tip is a piece of advice to help you. Here are some tips for your notebook.

- Put words from one topic in the same place, e.g. food in one place, clothes in another, etc. Don't mix them up [put them together with no order]. You can also have grammar topics, e.g. 'uncountable nouns', or a page for words that all have a connection, e.g. words and phrases that were all in a story you read in English. Some words and phrases will go in more than one topic.
- If you can't find a topic for a new word or phrase, e.g. *useful* or *in particular*, put them in a different place in your notebook, e.g. a page for each day or each week, or perhaps one page for every English lesson you have. Write the date clearly at the top, e.g. Monday 14<sup>th</sup> May.
- When you write down new vocabulary, write a translation if it is necessary [you need it; *opp* unnecessary], but also write the meaning in English if it is possible, or draw pictures.
- If possible, add synonyms, opposites, other parts of speech, etc. (See Unit 1.)  
awful *adj* = terrible (*syn* dreadful)  
enjoy *v* = like something and get pleasure from it *n* = enjoyment *adj* = enjoyable
- Example sentences help you with the grammar of a word, or with word partners (collocations).  
I enjoy living in a big city. (NOT I enjoy to live in a big city.) (See Units 87–8.)  
I spent two weeks in Rome. (NOT I passed two weeks in Rome. You spend time in a place.) (See Unit 74.)
- Remember, words often have more than one meaning that you need to know, e.g. a tip is also money that you give, for example, to a waiter for serving you in a restaurant.

# Exercises

2.1 Organise the words into the topics below. One word can go in two different topics. Use a dictionary to help you.

diet branch lay the table count *v* dig *v* ground flour add up  
raw leaf minus butcher thousand frozen zero butterfly

food	garden	numbers
diet		



2.2 Explain these words in English, or draw a picture, or if you think an explanation is too difficult and a drawing is not possible, write a translation instead.

- 1 raw not cooked .....
- 2 dig .....
- 3 butcher .....
- 4 leaf .....
- 5 flour .....
- 6 lay the table .....
- 7 add up .....
- 8 minus .....

2.3 What information could you include with these words? The answers are all on the opposite page.

- 1 forget opposite - remember .....
- 2 awful .....
- 3 necessary .....
- 4 translate .....
- 5 tip .....
- 6 enjoy .....

2.4

### Over to you

Answer the questions. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

- 1 Look again at what the students said on the opposite page. What are the good things that they do? Underline them.
- 2 Do you do all of these things? .....
- 3 Is there anything you don't do now, but will do in the future? .....
- 4 At the moment, which person's notebook is most like your notebook? .....
- 5 What are the most useful tips on the opposite page for you? .....

# Using a dictionary

## A What dictionaries do I need?

A **bilingual** dictionary [using two languages] is easy for you to understand, and quick and easy to use. A dictionary in English will give you reading practice in English and many more examples of how words are used. If possible, use both. These are good dictionaries in English for your level, and most of them are available online:

- Cambridge Learner's Dictionary*      ● *Oxford Wordpower Dictionary*  
*Longman Active Study Dictionary*      *Macmillan Essential Dictionary*

## B Information in dictionaries

If you **look up** a word [find a word in a dictionary] using the *Cambridge Learner's Dictionary*, the information is shown like this:

pronunciation using phonemic symbols (see page 247)

part of speech (= noun)

a definition explains the meaning

fixed phrases using the word are shown in bold (see Units 75–6)

**fun**<sup>1</sup> /fʌn/ *noun* [u] **1** enjoyment or pleasure, or something that gives you enjoyment or pleasure. *She's great fun to be with.* ○ *Have fun!* (= enjoy yourself) ○ *It's no fun having to work late every night.* **2** *for fun/for the fun of it* for pleasure and not for any other reason **3** *make fun of sb/sth* to make a joke about someone or something in an unkind way. *The other children at school used to make fun of his hair.*

[U] tells you that *fun* is uncountable (see Unit 86)

examples are in italics

bold italics show common word partners (see Unit 74)

### 3.1 Correct the spelling mistakes. Use a dictionary to check your answers.

- |                |               |                |       |
|----------------|---------------|----------------|-------|
| 1 allways      | <u>always</u> | 6 confortable  | ..... |
| 2 realy        | .....         | 7 accomodation | ..... |
| 3 unfortunatly | .....         | 8 beautifull   | ..... |
| 4 expecially   | .....         | 9 unbeleivable | ..... |
| 5 cloths       | .....         | 10 necessary   | ..... |

### 3.2 In the word *island* /'aɪlənd/, the letter 's' is silent (not pronounced). Use your dictionary to find the silent letters in these words.

- 1 knee                      2 comb                      3 castle                      4 salmon                      5 receipt



## C Defining words

'Defining words' are words that dictionaries use when they define [explain] the words in the dictionary. Some of these are quite common.

- emphasise** [give something more attention and importance], e.g. My teacher has always emphasised the importance of writing down new words in a notebook.
- relating to or connected to/with** [having a relationship with someone or something], e.g. *musical* is connected with / related to *music*
- amount** [how much there is of something], e.g. £5 million is a large amount of money.
- official** [done by the government or someone in authority], e.g. A passport is an official document.
- behave** [do or say things in a particular way], e.g. People can behave strangely when they're nervous.

3.3 Complete the dictionary definitions using words from the box.

~~connected with~~ emphasise relating to behave official amount

- 1 industrial /ɪn'dʌstriəl/ 1 adjective *connected with* industry
- 2 sum /sʌm/ noun [C] an ..... of money
- 3 pretend /prɪ'tend/ verb [I,T] to ..... as if something is true when it is not
- 4 certificate /sə'tɪfɪkət/ noun [C] an ..... document that gives details to show something is true
- 5 not at all /nɒt ət ɔ:l/ used instead of 'no' or 'not' to ..... what you are saying:  
*I'm not at all happy about it*
- 6 legal /'li:ɡəl/ adjective ..... the law

D

Using a dictionary

- When you use a dictionary to check the meaning of a word, put a tick (✓) next to it. Each time you return to a page with a tick, see [find out] if you remember the word.
- When you meet a new word or phrase in a text, first try to guess the meaning [try to think of the meaning when you don't know it]. Then, use a dictionary to see if your guess was correct.
- Don't just read the dictionary definition. Example phrases and sentences show you how a word or phrase is used, and they help you to understand the meaning more clearly.
- If you look up a word in a bilingual dictionary and get two or three different translations, check these words in an English dictionary to see which translation is the best one for the situation.
- Remember that many words have more than one meaning. The first meaning in the dictionary is not always the one you want. You may need to read through the different meanings.

3.4 Answer the questions, and use an English dictionary to check the answers.

- 1 What does *puppy* mean? *It's a very young dog.*
- 2 Is the correct spelling *organize* or *organise*?
- 3 What part of speech is *extremely*?
- 4 What kind of noun is *advice*?
- 5 What preposition follows the verb *rely*?
- 6 Look up *friend*, and then the words in bold that are often used with it. Can you complete these phrases? *She's an ..... friend; he's my ..... friend; you ..... friends with people.*

3.5 Match the sentences on the right with the different meanings of *post* on the left.

**post**<sup>1</sup> /pəʊst/ noun 1 [SYSTEM] [no plural] UK (US mail) the system for sending letters, parcels, etc *Your letter is in the post.* ○ *I'm sending the documents by post.*  
 ○ 2 [LETTERS] [u] UK (US mail) letters, parcels, etc that you send or receive *Has the post arrived/come yet?* ○  
 3 [JOB] [c] formal a job a part-time post ○ a teaching post 4 [POLE] [c] a long, vertical piece of wood or metal fixed into the ground at one end *I found the dog tied to a post.*

- 1 He's applied for a post overseas.
- 2 Did you send the cheque by post?
- 3 I tied the flag to a post.
- 4 We haven't had any post yet.

## English language words

## A Parts of speech

“I have a brown leather chair by the window, and I often sit there in the morning to read the paper.”

In the sentence above, *I* is a **pronoun**; *chair*, *window*, *morning* and *paper* are all **nouns**; *have*, *sit* and *read* are **verbs**; *brown* and *leather* are **adjectives**; *often* is an **adverb**; *by* is a **preposition**; *the* is a **definite article**; *a* is an **indefinite article**; *and* is a **conjunction** or **link word**.



Here are two more examples:

“We saw an elephant at the zoo yesterday.”

*Elephant* and *zoo* are **nouns**; *saw* is a **verb**; *at* is a **preposition**; *an* is an **indefinite article**; *the* is a **definite article**.

“It was a cold night, so I walked quickly.”

*Was* and *walked* are **verbs**; *cold* is an **adjective**; *night* is a **noun**; *quickly* is an **adverb**; *so* is a **link word**.

## B Grammar

When you are learning vocabulary, you need to know certain things about different words; for example, if nouns are **countable**, e.g. *books*, *apples*, *chairs*; or **uncountable**, e.g. *information* (NOT **informations**), *advice* (NOT **advices**). (See Unit 86.)

With verbs, you need to know if they are **regular**, e.g. *work*, *live*, etc; or **irregular**, e.g. *go/went*, *take/took*. You will also need to learn the grammar of **phrasal verbs**, e.g. *take something off*, *wake up*. (See Units 79–80.)

You also need to learn certain groups of words as **phrases**, e.g. *at the moment*, *never mind*, *see you later*. (See Units 75–6.)

## C Word building

In the word *uncomfortable*, *un-* is a **prefix**, and *-able* is a **suffix**. Other common prefixes include *in-* and *dis-*, e.g. *incorrect* and *dislike*. Common suffixes include *-ment* and *-ive*, e.g. *improvement* and *attractive*. (See Units 69–71.)

## D Pronunciation

Dictionaries show the pronunciation of a word using **phonemic symbols**, e.g. *book* /bʊk/, *before* /bɪ'fɔː/, *cinema* /'sɪnəmə/.

Every word has one or more **syllables**, e.g. *book* has one syllable, *before* has two syllables, *cinema* has three syllables.

It is important to know which syllable to stress, e.g. on *before* it is the second syllable (be'fore), on *cinema* it is the first syllable ('cinema). The vertical mark ' shows where the stressed syllable begins.

## E Punctuation

Every sentence must begin with a **capital letter** and end with a **full stop**. Some sentences have a **comma**, which often shows a **pause** [when you stop reading or speaking for a short time] in a long sentence. Did you also know that a question must end with a **question mark**?

# Exercises

## 4.1 Put the words into the correct columns.

~~noun~~ comma phonemic symbol adverb stress  
question mark syllable preposition full stop adjective

parts of speech	punctuation	pronunciation
noun		

## 4.2 There is one word missing in each line of the text. Where does the missing word go? What could it be? What part of speech is it?

Last year I went to<sup>1</sup>for my holiday. I spent the first week Seville staying with a couple of friends, and then I a train to Barcelona, where I spent another ten days. It is beautiful city and I had a marvellous time. I stayed in a very hotel right in the centre, but I didn't mind spending a lot money because it was a wonderful and it was very convenient. My brother was the person who recommended it; he goes Spain a lot and he stays anywhere else. I may go back next year if have enough time.

- 1 Spain (noun).....
- 2 .....
- 3 .....
- 4 .....
- 5 .....
- 6 .....
- 7 .....
- 8 .....
- 9 .....
- 10 .....

## 4.3 Answer the questions.

- 1 What type of verb is *break*? an irregular verb.....
- 2 What does a sentence begin with? .....
- 3 What do you put at the end of every sentence? .....
- 4 What's missing here. ....
- 5 What shows you there is a pause in the middle of a long sentence? .....
- 6 What type of noun is *butter*? .....
- 7 What type of verb are *pick somebody up*, and *grow up*? .....
- 8 What are *full stop* and *comma* examples of? .....
- 9 How do dictionaries show the pronunciation of a word? .....
- 10 Is the 'a' in *phrase* pronounced the same as *can*, *can't* or *late*? .....

## 4.4 Mark the stress on each word. How many syllables are there?

'English 2. informal opposite syllable  
decide adjective education pronunciation

## 4.5 Look at these words and answer the questions.

cheap dangerous kind lucky

- 1 What part of speech are these words? adjectives.....
- 2 Can you change the first two words into adverbs? .....
- 3 Is the pronunciation of *kind* like *wind* (noun) or *find* (verb)? .....
- 4 What prefix do you need to form the opposite of the last two words? .....
- 5 What suffix makes a noun from *kind*? .....

# 5 Country, nationality and language

## A Who speaks what where?

country	nationality	language
Australia	Australian	English
Brazil	Brazilian	Portuguese
China	Chinese	Mandarin (and Cantonese)
Egypt	Egyptian	Arabic
France	French	French
Germany	German	German
Greece	Greek	Greek
Israel	Israeli	Hebrew
Italy	Italian	Italian
Japan	Japanese	Japanese
(South) Korea	Korean	Korean
Poland	Polish	Polish
Russia	Russian	Russian
Saudi Arabia	Saudi Arabian	Arabic
Spain	Spanish	Spanish
Switzerland	Swiss	Swiss-German, French, Italian
Thailand	Thai	Thai
Turkey	Turkish	Turkish
the UK (United Kingdom)*	British	English
the USA (United States of America)	American	English

\*the UK (England, Scotland, Wales and Northern Ireland)

I come from Argentina, so I'm **Argentinian** and my **first language** is Spanish. The capital is Buenos Aires, which has a **population** of more than 10 million people.

### Common mistakes

He's English. (NOT He's english); We ate **French** food. (NOT We ate ~~Francee~~ food.)

I went to **the USA**. (NOT I went ~~to~~ USA.) I also visited **the UK**. (NOT I also ~~visited~~ UK.)

## B Parts of the world

The **continents** in the world are **Europe**, **Africa**, **Asia**, **North America**, **South America**, **Australia** [Australia and New Zealand] and **Antarctica**.

We also use these terms for different parts of the world:

the **Middle East** (e.g. United Arab Emirates, Saudi Arabia), the **Far East** (e.g. Thailand, Japan), the **Caribbean** (e.g. Jamaica, Barbados), **Scandinavia** (Sweden, Norway, Denmark, Finland).

## C The people

When we are talking about people from a particular country, we add 's' to nationalities ending in '-i' or '-(i)an', but we need the definite article (the) for most others.

Brazilians/Russians	} are ...	The British / The French	} are ...
Thais/Israelis		The Swiss / The Japanese	

With both groups we can also use the word 'people', e.g. Brazilian people, British people, etc.

# Exercises

## 5.1 Answer the questions.

- 1 What nationality are people from Poland? Polish.....
- 2 What nationality are people from Thailand? .....
- 3 What language is spoken in Spain? .....
- 4 Where do people speak Hebrew? .....
- 5 Where do people speak Mandarin? .....
- 6 What language is spoken in Brazil? .....
- 7 What language is spoken in Egypt? .....
- 8 What nationality are people from Germany? .....
- 9 Write down three countries whose first language is English. ....
- 10 Write down three languages spoken in Switzerland. ....

## 5.2 What parts of the world are these countries in? Write the continent, e.g. Europe, or the area, e.g. the Far East.

- |                               |                   |
|-------------------------------|-------------------|
| 1 Germany <u>Europe</u> ..... | 4 Italy .....     |
| 2 Japan .....                 | 5 Jamaica .....   |
| 3 Saudi Arabia .....          | 6 Argentina ..... |

## 5.3 Underline the main stress in the words in the box, and practise saying them. Use the pronunciation in the index to help you.

Brazilian	Japan	Egyptian	Arabic	Scandinavia
Chinese	Portuguese	Australia	Saudi Arabia	

## 5.4 Write the answers.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 Bangkok is the capital of <u>Thailand</u> ..... | 4 Moscow is the capital of .....       |
| 2 Ankara is the capital of .....                  | 5 Buenos Aires is the capital of ..... |
| 3 Seoul is the capital of .....                   | 6 Athens is the capital of .....       |

## 5.5 Complete the sentences with the name of the people from the country on the right.

- |  |             |
|--|-------------|
| 1 I've worked a lot with <u>the French</u> ..... | FRANCE      |
| 2 I know lots of .....                           | GERMANY     |
| 3 We do a lot of business with .....             | JAPAN       |
| 4 I used to know a lot of .....                  | ISRAEL      |
| 5 I have always found ..... very friendly.       | BRAZIL      |
| 6 People often say that ..... are very reserved. | BRITAIN     |
| 7 ..... are very organised.                      | SWITZERLAND |
| 8 I met a lot of ..... on my trip to Moscow.     | RUSSIA      |

## 5.6

### Over to you

[www.irLanguage.com](http://www.irLanguage.com)

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

Answer the questions for you, then ask a friend – if possible, someone from a different country – and write their answers.

- 1 What's your nationality? .....
- 2 What's the capital city and population of your country? .....
- 3 What's your first language? .....
- 4 What other languages do you speak? .....
- 5 Which countries have you visited? .....
- 6 Which countries would you like to visit? .....

## Facts

## Did you know ...

- Two thirds of the **surface**<sup>1</sup> of the **Earth**<sup>2</sup> is **covered in** water.
- El Azizia in Libya is the hottest place **in the world**, where **temperatures of over**<sup>3</sup> 57 °C (57 **degrees** Celsius) have been recorded.
- The coldest place **on earth** is probably Vostok in Antarctica, which reached a temperature of **minus** 89 °C.
- The Krubera-Voronja **Cave** near the Black Sea coast in Georgia, is the deepest cave in the world. It is **over** 2000 metres deep.
- The Beijing–Hangzhou Grand **Canal** is the longest canal in the world. It is 1,794 kilometres long.
- The highest **waterfall** in the world is the Salto Angel Falls in Venezuela. It is 993 metres high.
- The Amazon Rainforest is the largest **rainforest** in the world, **covering** 40% of the South American continent.
- The Pacific is the largest **ocean** in the world, and is nearly twice the size of the Atlantic Ocean.

<sup>1</sup> the top or outside part  
<sup>2</sup> the planet we live on

<sup>3</sup> more than

The Krubera-Voronja Cave



Beijing-Hangzhou Grand Canal



The Salto Angel Waterfall

## Language help

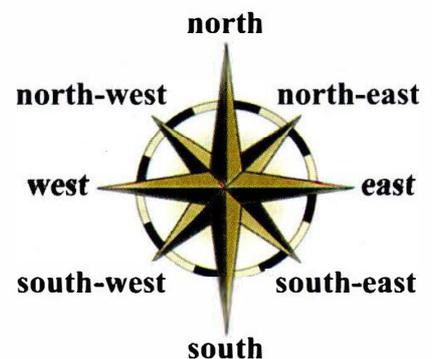
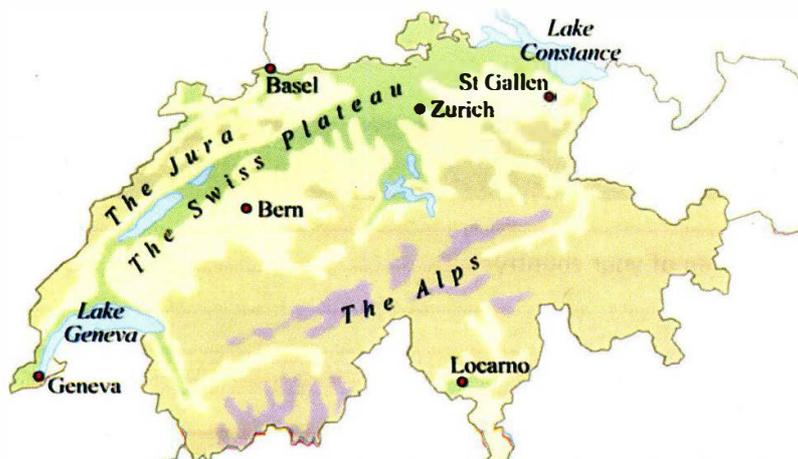
www.irLanguage.com

**Cover** can mean that something is over something else, e.g. *The surface was **covered in** water; The ground was **covered with** snow.* Cover can also refer to the size of something, e.g. *The Amazon rainforest **covers** 40% of South America, or the distance you travel, e.g. We **covered** ten miles in one day.*

## B

## Geography

Switzerland consists of [is made or formed from] three main geographical regions [areas in a country or the world]: The Swiss Plateau, The Jura, and The Alps. Switzerland is a land of **contrasts** [big differences], with completely different **landscapes** [the appearance of an area of land]. The **climate** [weather conditions] can also change within a very short distance. For example, Ascona **in the south** has an almost Mediterranean climate, but the Dufour Peak in Valais has a very cold climate. The distance between the two is just 70 kilometres.



# Exercises

## 6.1 Look at the map of Switzerland and complete the sentences.

- 1 Zurich is *in the north* .....
- 2 The Jura mountains are .....
- 3 Geneva is .....
- 4 St Gallen is .....
- 5 Basel is .....
- 6 Lake Constance is .....
- 7 Locarno is .....

## 6.2 Test your knowledge. Can you complete these sentences without looking at the opposite page?

- 1 Two thirds of the *surface* ..... of the Earth is covered in water.
- 2 Vostok in Antarctica is the .....
- 3 El Azizia in Libya is the .....
- 4 The Krubera-Voronja ..... is the deepest in the world.
- 5 The Beijing–Hangzhou Grand ..... is the longest in the world.
- 6 At 993 metres the Salto Angel Falls is the highest ..... in the world.
- 7 The Amazon is the largest .....
- 8 The largest ..... in the world is the Pacific.
- 9 The ..... we live on is called Earth.

## 6.3 Complete the sentences.

- 1 Mount Everest is the highest mountain in the *world* .....
- 2 In the autumn, the ground is ..... in leaves that have fallen off the trees.
- 3 You find this animal in the semi-desert ..... of Australia.
- 4 Brazil is a country of ..... : large empty areas inland, and cities near the coast.
- 5 The Amazon rainforest ..... 40% of the South American continent.
- 6 Mountains and lakes are typical of the ..... in Switzerland.
- 7 It was a freezing night. The ..... was well below zero.
- 8 Switzerland ..... of three main geographical regions.
- 9 It takes the moon just under 28 days to go round the .....
- 10 People say Cape Town in South Africa has a wonderful ..... : sunny for much of the year, and never too hot or very cold.
- 11 The ..... from London to Paris is 340 kilometres; that's less than the ..... from London to Edinburgh.
- 12 When the temperature fell to ..... 10 ..... celsius, all the schools in the town closed.

## 6.4

### Over to you

Answer the questions about your country and your region.

- 1 What are the highest and lowest temperatures?
- 2 Do you like the climate?
- 3 Are there any regions which have a very different landscape from the rest of the country?
- 4 Do you have any long canals, or famous caves or waterfalls?
- 5 How would you describe the landscape in the region where you live?
- 6 What's the distance from the place where you live to the next big town?

## A

## Weather conditions

Notice that it is very common to form adjectives by adding -y.

noun	adjective	noun	adjective	verb
fog	foggy	sun	sunny	the sun is shining
cloud	cloudy	wind	windy	the wind is blowing
the cold	cold	snow		it's snowing
ice	icy	rain	wet	it's raining

There are common word partners to describe weather conditions:

It was very cloudy this morning, but the sun came out after lunch. [appeared]

The accident happened in thick fog. [bad fog]

We had some heavy rain at the weekend. [a lot of rain; *opp* light rain]

There was a strong wind when we were on the boat. [a lot of wind]

The wind has blown all the apples off the tree.

It rained in the morning, but the sky was clear by lunchtime. [no clouds]

It's been extremely cold today. [very; also extremely hot/windy]

## B

## Rain and storms

For heavy rain we often use the verb **pour**, e.g. **pour with rain**. For short periods of light or heavy rain, we use the noun **shower**. A **storm** is heavy rain with strong winds.

It poured with rain this afternoon.

Look, it's really pouring (with rain) now.

We had a couple of heavy/light showers this morning.

A period of hot weather sometimes ends with a **thunderstorm**.

First it becomes very **humid** [the air feels very warm and wet], then you hear **thunder** and see **lightning**, and it's followed by heavy rain.

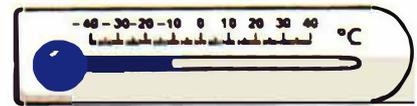


## C

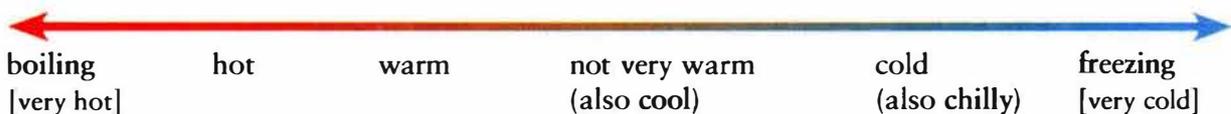
## Temperature\*



40 degrees Celsius



10 degrees below zero



\* how hot or cold it is

## Language help

**Cool** can either mean slightly cold in a negative way, e.g. *We've had a cool summer*, or slightly cold in a pleasant way, e.g. *The water in the pool was lovely and cool*.

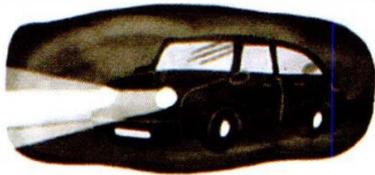
**Mild** is often used in a positive way to describe weather that is not as cold as usual, e.g. *It's been a mild winter*.

# Exercises

## 7.1 Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

- |            |                                     |                 |
|------------|-------------------------------------|-----------------|
| 1 a sunny  | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | a with rain     |
| 2 heavy    | <input type="checkbox"/>            | b fog           |
| 3 a strong | <input type="checkbox"/>            | c sky           |
| 4 a clear  | <input type="checkbox"/>            | d and lightning |
| 5 pour     | <input type="checkbox"/>            | e day           |
| 6 thick    | <input type="checkbox"/>            | f rain          |
| 7 thunder  | <input type="checkbox"/>            | g wind          |

## 7.2 Write short sentences to describe the weather conditions in each picture.



1 It's foggy.....



3 .....



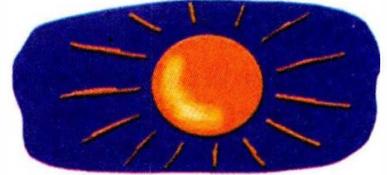
5 .....



2 .....



4 .....



6 .....

## 7.3 True or false? If a sentence is false, change it to make it true.

- When it's foggy, you need sunglasses. *False. When it's foggy you can't see very well.*
- It's nice to sit outside when it's freezing.
- If you're boiling, you might enjoy a swim.
- A shower is a type of wind.
- If it's chilly, you may want to put on a coat.
- If it's humid, the air will be very dry.
- A mild winter means it is colder than usual.
- If it rains, the road will be wet.

## 7.4 Complete the sentences.

- We had really thick *fog*..... this morning.
- I don't mind wet weather if it stays quite mild. I just hate the .....
- We had a heavy ..... this morning, but it only lasted a few minutes.
- It was ..... with rain when we left the house.
- It was minus ten ..... in New York yesterday. It is often below ..... here in winter. It's ..... cold!
- It's getting very humid. We might have a ..... later.
- It was cloudy and grey this morning, but when the sun ..... out it was quite hot.
- What's the ..... today? It feels much colder than yesterday.
- It was hot sitting in the sun, but under the beach umbrella it was nice and .....

## 7.5

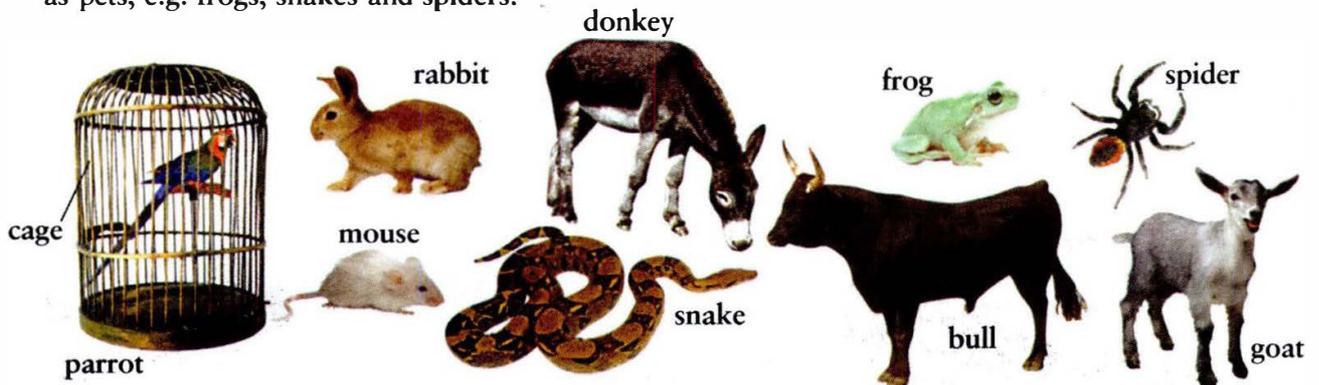
### Over to you

Do you have these weather conditions in your country? When do you have them?

humid weather	storms and thunderstorms	strong winds
thick fog	temperatures below zero	showers

### A Pets and farm animals

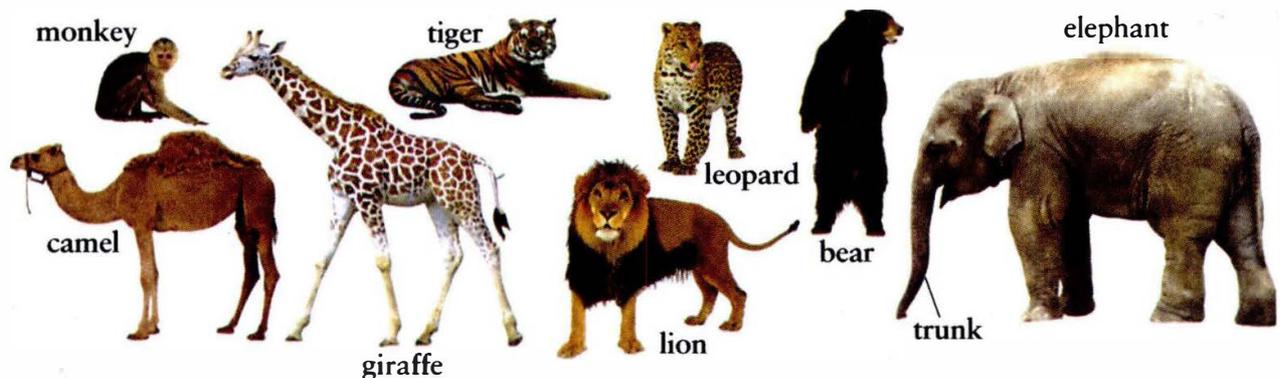
In the UK, many people keep pets [animals that live with people]. The most common are dogs and cats, but people also keep birds, e.g. parrots, that are usually in a cage. Children sometimes keep mice (*sing* mouse) and rabbits. Some people keep more unusual animals as pets, e.g. frogs, snakes and spiders.



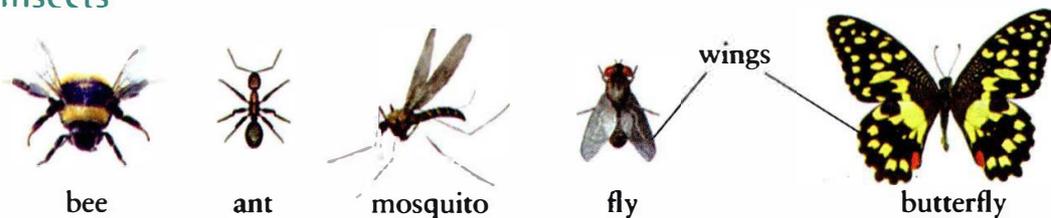
Farms in the UK may have sheep, pigs, cows, horses, donkeys, chickens, goats and a bull.

### B Wild animals

The pictures show a number of wild animals [animals that normally live in natural conditions]. If you are lucky, you may see these animals in the wild [living free], but you will probably see them in a zoo. Some of these animals, for example tigers, are now quite rare [not often seen or found]. It is important that we protect [keep safe] these endangered animals.



### C Insects



### D Sea creatures

Many different creatures [living things, e.g. animals] live in the sea.



# Exercises

## 8.1 Put the words into the correct columns.

horse	monkey	goat	fly	bull	bee	elephant	pig
mosquito	tiger	donkey	camel	ant	leopard	butterfly	

farm animals	wild animals	insects
horse		

## 8.2 Look at the underlined letters in each pair of words. Is the pronunciation the same or different? Use the index to help you.

- |                                      |                       |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 whale water <u>different</u> ..... | 6 goat giraffe .....  |
| 2 cat camel <u>same</u> .....        | 7 spider wild .....   |
| 3 bear bee .....                     | 8 camel snake .....   |
| 4 leopard mosquito .....             | 9 leopard shark ..... |
| 5 lion tiger .....                   | 10 monkey frog .....  |

## 8.3 Complete the sentences.

- Cats and dogs are the most common pets ..... in the UK.
- I've only seen ..... animals in zoos or on TV.
- I don't like keeping birds in a ..... ; they need more space.
- I hate ants and mosquitos. In fact, I hate all .....
- It's hard to see tigers in the wild because they are now .....
- Some animals are disappearing, so we must ..... them.

## 8.4 Start each sentence with a suitable creature from the opposite page.

- Sharks ..... can swim very long distances.
- ..... are very clever and are similar to humans.
- ..... can travel through the desert for long distances without water.
- ..... can be 25 metres in length.
- ..... can eat leaves from tall trees when they are standing on the ground.
- ..... sometimes change their skin several times a year.
- ..... can pick things up with their trunk.
- ..... are kept as pets, usually in cages, and some can even talk!

## 8.5

### Over to you

www.irLanguage.com

Answer the questions. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

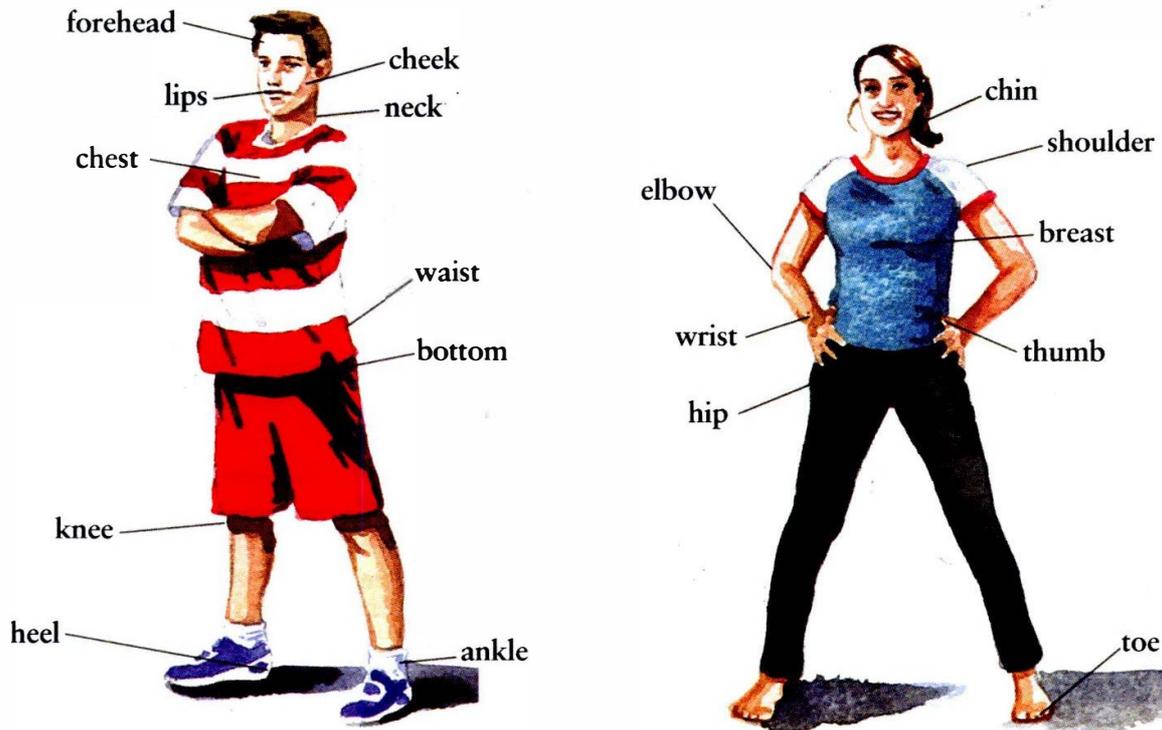
- Have you got any pets? What pets?
- Have you ever seen animals in the wild? What did you see? Where?
- How do you feel about birds in cages and wild animals in zoos?
- Are you frightened of any creatures, e.g. mice?

# 9

## The body and movement

### A Parts of the body

The outer part of the body is covered in skin. Too much sun is bad for your skin.



### B Movements with your mouth, face and head

People breathe through their nose or mouth. You breathe **in** and **out** about 12–15 times a minute.

People **smile** when they're happy, and sometimes **smile at** people to be polite.

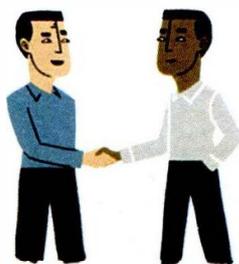
People **laugh at** things which are funny.

People sometimes **cry** if they're very unhappy, or receive bad news.

People in some countries **nod their head** [move it up and down] to mean 'yes', and **shake their head** [move it from side to side] for 'no'.

People often **yawn** when they're tired, and sometimes when they're bored.

### C Common expressions



shake hands with someone



fold your arms



comb your hair



wave to somebody



blow your nose

# Exercises

9.1 Find ten more words for parts of the body, either across or down.

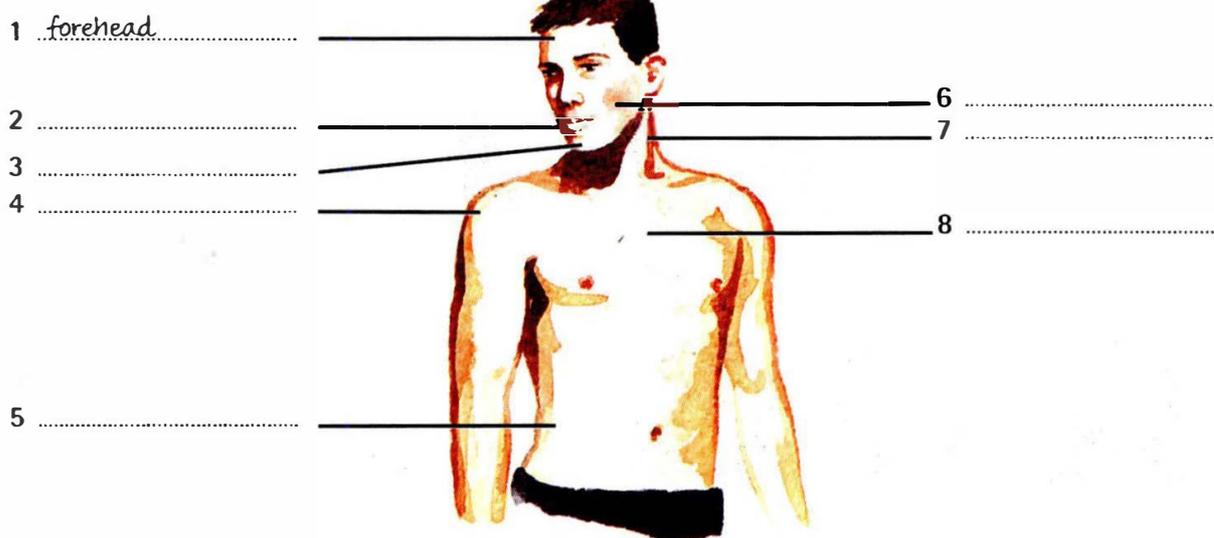
T	H	U	K	C	A	P
O	N	H	N	H	N	I
E	C	H	E	E	K	O
H	I	P	E	S	L	C
E	A	N	K	T	E	H
E	L	B	O	W	E	I
L	I	P	S	K	I	N

toe.....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....

9.2 Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

- |         |                                     |               |
|---------|-------------------------------------|---------------|
| 1 shake | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | a your hair   |
| 2 wave  | <input type="checkbox"/>            | b your nose   |
| 3 comb  | <input type="checkbox"/>            | c to somebody |
| 4 fold  | <input type="checkbox"/>            | d your head   |
| 5 blow  | <input type="checkbox"/>            | e hands       |
| 6 nod   | <input type="checkbox"/>            | f your arms   |

9.3 Label the picture.



9.4 What do these actions often mean? (There may be several possible answers.)

- 1 People often smile when they're happy.....
- 2 They often breathe quickly after .....
- 3 They laugh .....
- 4 They may wave to somebody .....
- 5 They blow their nose .....
- 6 They shake their head .....
- 7 And nod their head .....
- 8 They cry .....
- 9 They yawn .....

# Describing appearance

## A Describing beauty

Your **appearance** is the way you look, and we sometimes use different words to talk about beauty in men and women.

WOMEN can be **attractive** or **good-looking** [nice to look at], and we often use **pretty** [attractive] to describe a girl. We use **beautiful** or **gorgeous** for women who are very attractive.

MEN can be attractive and good-looking, but also **handsome**. If men are very attractive, we can say they are **gorgeous** or very good-looking, but not usually beautiful.

Tom has become quite **handsome**.

Bella looks **gorgeous** in that dress.

Sammy was very **pretty** when she was younger.

They're a very **good-looking** couple.

### Language help

The opposite of beautiful is **ugly**, but it is not very polite to describe someone as ugly; **ordinary** [not special or different] is more polite. It also isn't polite to say that someone is fat; **overweight** is more polite.

## B Size

We can talk about a person's **height** [how tall or short they are] and their **weight** [how heavy they are], e.g. *I'm roughly* [about; *syn* approximately] *one metre eighty (tall)*, and *I weigh just under eighty kilograms*. If someone is not tall or short, you can describe them as **medium height**. If a person is very similar to most other people in height and weight, you can say they are **average**.

A: How tall is Kiki?

A: Is Marco quite big?

B: **Medium height**, I'd say.

B: No, about **average**.

## C Hair



straight



wavy



curly

### Common mistakes

Remember that 'hair' is uncountable, e.g. She's got straight **hair**. (NOT She's got straight **hairs**.)

Also: She's got long black **hair**. (NOT She's got a long black hair.)

## D Talking about someone's appearance

A: What does Carla's boyfriend look like? [Can you describe his appearance?]

B: He's blond, and quite good-looking.

A: Is he tall?

B: Er, **tallish** [quite tall], but he's got **broad shoulders** [wide; *opp* narrow]. He looks very **athletic** [strong, healthy and often good at sports]. I think he does a lot of sport.

A: Is he quite smart? [clean, tidy and stylish]

B: Yeah, he dresses quite well. [the clothes he wears are quite nice]

### Language help

We can use the suffix **-ish** at the end of some adjectives to mean 'quite', e.g. *She's got longish hair*, and at the end of some numbers to mean 'more or less', e.g. *He's twentyish*.

# Exercises

## 10.1 Complete the sentences.

- 1 She's got straight hair .....
- 2 Kanya is very good-.....
- 3 Beata's got blonde .....
- 4 Her brother's got very broad .....
- 5 That's a nice suit: Jack's very ..... today.
- 6 I would say he was medium .....
- 7 Alexandra's hair is fair but her brother's is quite .....

## 10.2 Find six more pairs of words in the box. Why are they pairs?

<u>attractive</u>	height	average	<u>good-looking</u>	weight	narrow	roughly
tall	curly	approximately	medium	wavy	broad	weigh

Attractive and good-looking are similar in meaning.  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

## 10.3 Complete the dialogues using words that are similar to the underlined words.

- 1 A: She's good-looking.  
B: Yes, very attractive .....
- 2 A: Marie-José looked beautiful last night.  
B: Yes, absolutely .....
- 3 A: Her boyfriend's quite good-looking.  
B: Yes, he is rather .....
- 4 A: Angelo looks very strong and healthy.  
B: Yes, I think he's very .....
- 5 A: That little girl is attractive, isn't she?  
B: Yes, she's very .....
- 6 A: Danny's getting fat.  
B: Yes, he is a bit .....
- 7 A: Did you think he was a bit ugly?  
B: Yes, he was quite .....
- 8 A: Is she about 25?  
B: Yes, .....
- 9 A: He's just above average height.  
B: Yes, he is ....., isn't he?

## 10.4

**Over to you**  
Answer the questions.

- 1 How tall are you? .....
- 2 What's your hair like? .....
- 3 Think about one of your best friends. What does he/she look like? .....

## A What are you like?

**Describe your character**<sup>1</sup>

Put a circle round the number that describes you. For example, in the first line 1 = very positive, 3 = not very positive or negative, 5 = very negative.

I think I'm very <b>positive</b> <sup>2</sup> .	1	2	3	4	5	I'm quite a <b>negative</b> person.
I'm usually <b>reliable</b> <sup>3</sup> .	1	2	3	4	5	I'm quite <b>unreliable</b> .
I'm quite <b>confident</b> <sup>4</sup> .	1	2	3	4	5	I'm quite <b>shy</b> <sup>5</sup> .
I'm <b>hard-working</b> <sup>6</sup> .	1	2	3	4	5	I'm quite <b>lazy</b> .
I have a good <b>sense of humour</b> <sup>7</sup> .	1	2	3	4	5	I'm usually quite <b>serious</b> <sup>8</sup> .
I'm usually quite <b>patient</b> <sup>9</sup> .	1	2	3	4	5	I'm quite <b>impatient</b> .

<sup>1</sup> what you are like as a person

<sup>2</sup> believe that good things will happen

<sup>3</sup> can be trusted to do what people expect you to do

<sup>4</sup> feeling sure about yourself and your abilities

<sup>5</sup> not confident, especially about meeting or talking to new people

<sup>6</sup> putting a lot of effort into your work and spending a lot of time on it

<sup>7</sup> the ability to laugh and understand when something is funny

<sup>8</sup> a serious person is quiet and doesn't laugh very much

<sup>9</sup> able to stay calm and not get angry, especially when things take a lot of time

**Common mistakes**

A: What's he like? (NOT How is he like?)

B: He's very nice. (NOT He's like very nice.)

## B Opposites

positive	negative
generous [happy to give more money or help than is usual]	mean
honest [an honest person tells the truth]	dishonest
clever, intelligent [able to learn and understand things quickly]	stupid
calm [relaxed and not worried or frightened]	nervous, anxious

**Language help**

We use **kind** to describe someone who wants to help people a lot, and **nice, friendly or pleasant** for someone who is happy to talk to people. The opposites are **unkind, unfriendly and unpleasant**.

## C Describing a friend

“The first thing I would say about my best friend is that she's very **sensible**<sup>1</sup>. I've never known Irma to do anything **silly**<sup>2</sup>, and I know I can always **trust**<sup>3</sup> her. She's also very **creative**<sup>4</sup>; she makes things, and she's a very **talented**<sup>5</sup> artist. I **wish**<sup>6</sup> I had her talent.”

<sup>1</sup> practical; doesn't do stupid things

<sup>2</sup> not sensible, a bit stupid

<sup>3</sup> be sure that she is honest

<sup>4</sup> good at thinking of new ideas and using her imagination

<sup>5</sup> has a natural ability

<sup>6</sup> I would like to have her talent but I haven't got it.

# Exercises

11.1 Find five pairs of opposites and put them into the correct columns.

nice	mean	sensible	lazy	calm	generous
unpleasant	hard-working	silly	nervous		

positive	negative
nice	

11.2 Write the opposites using the correct prefix.

- |                 |                 |                 |
|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1 unkind        | 3 .....pleasant | 5 .....honest   |
| 2 .....friendly | 4 .....patient  | 6 .....reliable |

11.3 Describe the person in the sentences, in one word.

- My brother is in the office from 8 am to 6 pm every day. *hard-working*
- He has never bought me a drink in ten years. ....
- She often promises to do things but sometimes she forgets. ....
- My teacher explains things again and never gets angry. ....
- Agnetta finds it difficult to meet people and talk to strangers. ....
- Brett is practical and doesn't do anything stupid. ....
- Our teacher is nice, but he's quiet and he doesn't laugh a lot. ....
- Anya is very relaxed and doesn't seem to worry about things. ....
- My boss is really good at using his imagination to think of new ideas. ....
- Jessica can play several musical instruments. ....

11.4 Complete the sentences.

- My sister can't wait for anything; she's so *impatient*.
- I get very ..... before exams; I need to try and relax a bit more.
- I ..... I could paint as well as your brother; he's so creative.
- Beata hasn't done a thing since she's been here. Honestly, she's so .....
- I always have a laugh with my cousin – he's got a great sense of .....
- My younger sister is able to understand new ideas so quickly; she's very .....
- If Sarah says she'll do it, then she'll do it. I ..... her completely.
- He'd like to be relaxed and confident, but it's just not part of his .....
- He failed his exams, but he isn't ..... He just didn't do any work.
- Paola helped me bake some cakes last week; she's very .....

11.5

## Over to you

Complete the quiz on the opposite page for yourself. From all the words on the opposite page, which one would you most like to be, and which is the one you would hate to be? If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

# 12 Feelings

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

A

## How do you feel?

### Language help

We use **emotion** and **feeling(s)** for something which someone feels strongly about, e.g. love, hate or anger. **Emotions** are part of our character, e.g. *Timo is a very emotional person.* [shows his feelings easily] **Feeling** is often plural, e.g. *She doesn't like talking about her feelings.*

Well, obviously I'm very **proud**<sup>1</sup> of my son's success, but I'm a bit **disappointed**<sup>2</sup> that the local paper hasn't shown more interest in the story.

- <sup>1</sup> feeling good because you (or someone you know) has done something well
- <sup>2</sup> unhappy because someone or something was not as good as you hoped, or because something did not happen

We were **curious**<sup>5</sup> to see what all the noise was about, but I felt **anxious**<sup>6</sup> when I saw how angry the men were, and really **scared**<sup>7</sup> when they started coming towards us.

- <sup>5</sup> wanting to know or learn about something
- <sup>6</sup> worried
- <sup>7</sup> afraid; *syn* frightened

The politicians seem **confused**<sup>3</sup> about what to do, so I'm not **hopeful**<sup>4</sup> that things will improve.

- <sup>3</sup> not able to think clearly or understand something
- <sup>4</sup> feeling positive about a future situation

I think Tom ended the relationship because his girlfriend was getting **jealous**<sup>8</sup>, but now he's quite **upset**<sup>9</sup>.

- <sup>8</sup> unhappy and angry because someone you love seems too interested in another person
- <sup>9</sup> unhappy because something unpleasant has happened

### Language help

www.irLanguage.com

adjective	noun	adjective	noun
proud	pride	disappointed	disappointment
jealous	jealousy	confused	confusion
curious	curiosity	anxious	anxiety

## B The effect of the weather on our feelings

Why do people say they feel more **cheerful** [happy] when the sun shines, and **miserable** [unhappy] when it's raining? Why do some people suffer from SAD (seasonal affective disorder), which makes them feel **depressed** [unhappy, often for a long time, and without hope for the future] during long dark winters? Can the weather really affect our **mood** [the way we feel at a particular time], or is it just in our imaginations?

## C The effect of colour on our emotions

**Colour** can have an **effect** on our mood, but how do specific colours relate to our emotions?

**RED** can make us feel **energetic**<sup>1</sup>, but it can also indicate **anger**<sup>2</sup>. **PINK** though, is softer and more about maternal love and **caring for**<sup>3</sup> people. **GREEN** is associated with nature and is good for people suffering from **stress**<sup>4</sup>. **BLUE** is relaxing and helps us to be **creative**<sup>5</sup>, but too much dark blue can make us depressed.

- <sup>1</sup> wanting to be busy and doing a lot of things
- <sup>2</sup> being angry
- <sup>3</sup> looking after someone, especially someone young or old
- <sup>4</sup> feelings of worry caused by difficult situations such as problems at work
- <sup>5</sup> good at thinking of new ideas or using our imagination

# Exercises

12.1 Cover the opposite page. Complete the tables.

adjective	noun
angry	anger
jealous	
confused	
	pride

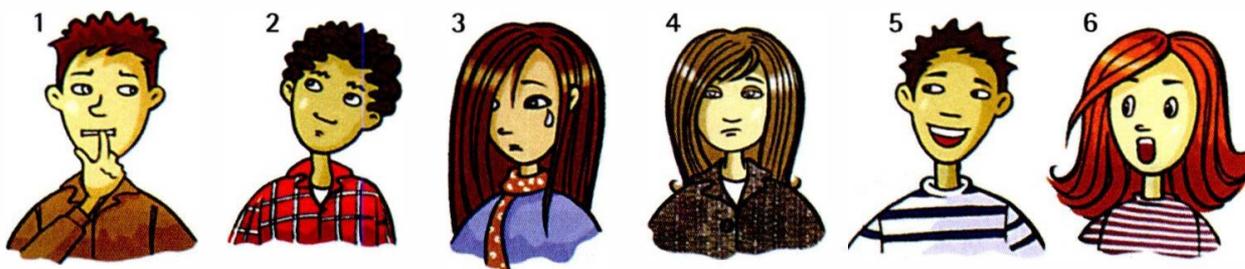
adjective	noun
disappointed	
	curiosity
anxious	
	emotion

12.2 Find the best sentence ending on the right for each of the sentence beginnings on the left.

- |                              |                                     |   |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------------|---|
| 1 He was very anxious when   | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | a he heard his aunt had died.                             |
| 2 He was very jealous when   | <input type="checkbox"/>            | b his father appeared on TV with the Prime Minister.      |
| 3 He was very scared when    | <input type="checkbox"/>            | c his 14-year-old daughter didn't get home until 2 am.    |
| 4 He was very proud when     | <input type="checkbox"/>            | d he saw the man coming towards him with a knife.         |
| 5 He was very upset when     | <input type="checkbox"/>            | e he was ill.   |
| 6 He was very miserable when | <input type="checkbox"/>            | f his best friend went out with the girl he really liked. |

12.3 Match the words and faces.

anxious ...1...    scared .....    cheerful .....    upset .....    confused .....    depressed .....



12.4 Complete the sentences.

- My aunt had to *care*..... for her elderly mother for years.
- I can't tell whether Benita is happy or not; she never shows her .....
- I'm much more ..... in the mornings. By the afternoon I feel tired.
- Weather has a big ..... on the way I feel.
- He's been under a lot of ..... recently because of the amount of work he has to do.
- Brendan's cheerful one minute and miserable the next; his ..... changes all the time.
- It's been a depressing month, but I'm ..... things will get better next month.
- I don't like walking home in the dark. I get very .....

12.5

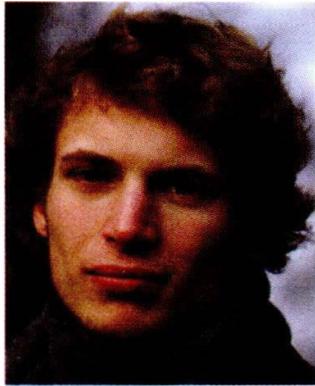
## Over to you

Answer the questions. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

- Does colour or the weather have an effect on your emotions? How?
- Do you ever suffer from stress? Why?
- Does your mood change a lot from day to day? Why?
- Do you feel more energetic at certain times of the day? Why?

# 13 Family and friends

## A Relatives\*



“My father died when I was nine, and so my mother was a widow<sup>1</sup> with four young children. She remarried five years later, so now I have a stepfather. As he is not my real father, I call him by his first name, which is Dieter. I’ve got an elder<sup>2</sup> brother called Thomas and two younger sisters, Anya and Claudia, who are twins<sup>3</sup>. We’re a close family<sup>4</sup>.”

My mother is an only child<sup>5</sup>, but I’ve got two uncles on my father’s side. One is married with two children, and the other is married with three children, so altogether I have five cousins. I get on well with<sup>6</sup> Uncle Rolf, and he always tells me I’m his favourite nephew. Of his nieces, I think he likes Anya best.

Recently my brother Thomas got married. His wife’s name is Sabine, so I now have a sister-in-law<sup>7</sup> as well.”

\* members of your family; *syn* relations

<sup>1</sup> a woman whose husband has died

<sup>2</sup> older

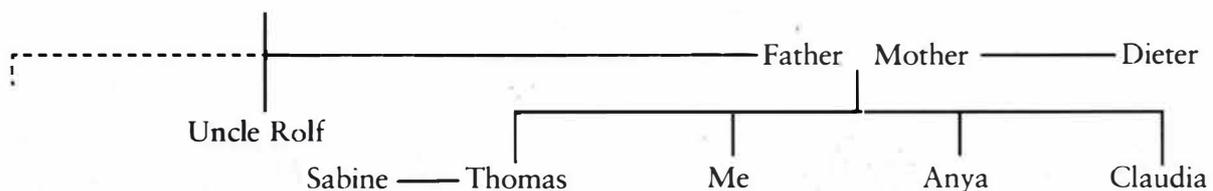
<sup>3</sup> two children born to one mother at the same time

<sup>4</sup> a family who like each other and stay together a lot

<sup>5</sup> without brothers or sisters

<sup>6</sup> have a good relationship with

<sup>7</sup> (also mother/brother/son-in-law, etc.)



### Common mistakes

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

It's more common and more natural to say 'Thomas's wife' (NOT the wife of Thomas) or 'Anna's younger sister' (NOT the younger sister of Anna).

## B Friends

“My best friend is Florian, an old school friend<sup>1</sup>. We got to know each other<sup>2</sup> when we were in the same class at school. We’ve been mates<sup>3</sup> ever since<sup>4</sup>, and our friendship is very important to both of us. He spends a lot of time with my family, and his current<sup>5</sup> girlfriend is actually one of Thomas’s ex-girlfriends. But we all get on really well.”

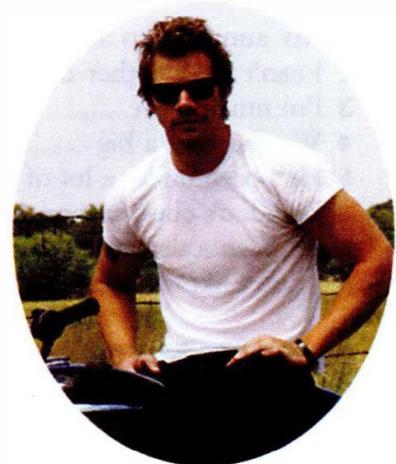
<sup>1</sup> someone you have known for a long time

<sup>2</sup> met and became friends

<sup>3</sup> friends; *informal*

<sup>4</sup> from that time until now

<sup>5</sup> the one he has now



Florian

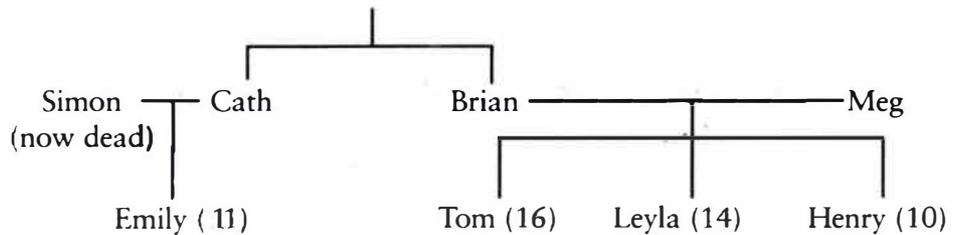
### Language help

www.irLanguage.com

We use the prefix *ex-* for a relationship we had in the past but do not have now, e.g. *The children stay with my ex-husband at the weekend; I saw an ex-girlfriend of mine yesterday.*

# Exercises

13.1 Look at the family tree, then complete the sentences below.



- 1 Simon died two years ago, so Cath is a widow.
- 2 Leyla is Cath's .....
- 3 Tom is Cath's .....
- 4 Cath is Meg's .....
- 5 Simon was Brian's .....
- 6 Tom is Leyla's ..... brother.
- 7 Emily is Leyla's .....
- 8 Emily is an ..... child.

13.2 Which words are being defined?

- 1 Your current ..... boyfriend is the one that you have now.
- 2 ..... means get married again.
- 3 ..... are all the members of your family.
- 4 Your ..... friend is the one you like more than any other.
- 5 An ..... friend is someone you have known for a long time.
- 6 ..... are two children born to one mother at the same time.
- 7 ..... is an informal word for a friend.
- 8 ..... is the noun when two people are friends.
- 9 Your ..... is the man who is married to your mother but is not your father.

13.3 Complete the text.

“I was still going out with James when I met my husband, Ben. We <sup>1</sup> got to know ..... each other because we went to the same gym twice a week. We went out with each other for about 18 months, and we got <sup>2</sup> ..... three years ago, so <sup>3</sup> ..... we've been a couple for almost five years. We've continued to go to the gym ever <sup>4</sup> ..... we got married, and I still quite often see James when we're there. It's nice if you can still <sup>5</sup> ..... with an <sup>6</sup> .....-boyfriend or -girlfriend.”

13.4

## Over to you

Answer the questions for you, then, if possible, ask a friend and write their answers.

- 1 Are you an only child? If not, do you have elder brothers or sisters? .....
- 2 Do you get on well with other members of your family? .....
- 3 Are you a close family? .....
- 4 Who was the last person in your family to get married? When? .....
- 5 Who's your best friend? .....
- 6 How long have you known him/her? .....
- 7 How did you get to know each other? .....

# 14

## Growing up

### A Ages and stages in the UK



Age	Stage
0	birth [the moment a baby is born]
Up to 12 months	a baby
12 months – 3 years old	a toddler
3–12 years old	a child: this period is your childhood
13–18 approximately	a teenager: during this period you are in your teens
18+	an adult
40+ approximately	people are <b>middle-aged</b> [in the middle of their lives]
60 or 65	retirement [when people stop work; they are retired]
80+	old age (we usually describe people as elderly)

### B Approximate ages

I'm in my **early twenties**. [21–23]  
 My parents are in their **mid-fifties**. [54–56]  
 My grandmother is in her **late seventies**. [77–79]  
 My grandfather is **nearly/almost eighty**. [he's probably 79]  
 My English teacher's **approximately/roughly thirty**.  
 [about 30 / more or less 30]

#### Common mistakes

We can say, **he's 30** or **he's 30 years old**. (NOT he has 30 or he's 30 years)  
 Also: a **30-year-old man** (NOT a 30-years-old man)

### C



#### Past and present

“My grandmother's name was Mary. She's **dead**<sup>1</sup> now. She died about ten years ago when I was in my teens, but I remember her well. She was **brought up**<sup>2</sup> on a farm in Wales, and her parents were very strict: as a teenager, they didn't **allow**<sup>3</sup> her to listen to the radio or go to parties in the village. **In the end**<sup>4</sup>, she decided to leave home and get a job in Cardiff. **At first**<sup>5</sup> it wasn't easy, but she **managed**<sup>6</sup> to find work, and she also met the man who became her husband: my grandfather. My mother was born four years later. She had a very different childhood. She grew up in the city, she **was allowed** to go to parties, and when she was in her teens, her parents **let**<sup>7</sup> her **stay out late**<sup>8</sup>. My mum is the same with me.”

<sup>1</sup> not living; *opp* alive

<sup>2</sup> looked after until you are an adult

<sup>3</sup> give permission

<sup>4</sup> finally, after a lot of time or thought

<sup>5</sup> at the beginning

<sup>6</sup> was able (but it was difficult)

<sup>7</sup> allowed

<sup>8</sup> not go home until late

#### Language help

**Let** and **allow** have the same meaning. **Let** is slightly more informal, and **allow** is often used in the passive.

*My dad **let me drive** his car. I **was allowed to drive** my dad's car.*

***You're not allowed to smoke** in that room. (NOT ~~it's not allowed to smoke~~ in that room.)*

# Exercises

## 14.1 Complete the sentences.

- 1 Isabella is only six months old – she’s still a baby .....
- 2 Chan-Hee was 22 a few months ago, so he’s in his .....
- 3 Susan is 35, so she’s in her .....
- 4 Leyla will be 13 this year, so she’ll soon be a .....
- 5 Ron is 53 and his wife is 47, so they’re both .....
- 6 Joan is 80 this year, so she is quite .....
- 7 Michael was a bus driver for 40 years but he’s now .....
- 8 Ravi is 18 this year, so legally he becomes .....
- 9 The boys are 14 and 16, so they’re both in their .....
- 10 Holly is just over a year old and she’s starting to walk, so she’s a ..... now.

## 14.2 Are the sentences true or false about Mary’s life on the opposite page? If a sentence is false, change it to make it true.

- 1 Mary was brought up in the city. False. Mary was brought up on a farm. .....
- 2 She grew up in Wales. ....
- 3 Her parents let her do what she wanted. ....
- 4 She wasn’t allowed to listen to the radio. ....
- 5 Life was easy when she went to Cardiff. ....
- 6 She couldn’t get a job in Cardiff. ....

## 14.3 Rewrite the sentences without using the underlined words and phrases. Keep a similar meaning.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 My parents <u>are dead</u> now.                               | My parents <u>aren’t alive now</u> ..... |
| 2 It was hard but <u>finally</u> I did it.                      | It was hard but .....                    |
| 3 She’s <u>approximately</u> my age.                            | She’s .....                              |
| 4 They’re <u>almost</u> thirty now.                             | They’re .....                            |
| 5 <u>I had to do what my parents wanted.</u>                    | My parents were .....                    |
| 6 My parents <u>let me</u> stay up and watch TV.                | I was .....                              |
| 7 My mum <u>looked after me</u> in Scotland.                    | I was .....                              |
| 8 I <u>was able to</u> pass my exams <u>but it wasn’t easy.</u> | I .....                                  |
| 9 I <u>didn’t go home until</u> late.                           | I .....                                  |
| 10 <u>I was allowed to</u> wear what I liked.                   | My parents .....                         |
| 11 I was happy <u>as a child.</u>                               | I had a happy .....                      |
| 12 My grandparents <u>don’t work any more.</u>                  | My grandparents are .....                |

## 14.4

### Over to you

Answer the questions. If possible, ask a friend and write their answers.

- 1 Where were you brought up? .....
- 2 What do you particularly remember about your childhood? .....
- 3 Were your parents strict? What weren't you allowed to do when you were a child? .....
- 4 How late were you allowed to stay out when you were a teenager? .....

## A Romance

“I had my first date<sup>1</sup> when I was 16, and it was terrible. I took a girl to the cinema but she didn't like the film and looked bored all evening; it was a bad start. Then, when I was 17, I went out with<sup>2</sup> a girl for three months, but we broke up<sup>3</sup> when she met a boy who was two years older than me, and had a car. My first serious relationship<sup>4</sup> was when I went to university. I got to know<sup>5</sup> Melanie because we were on the same course. At first we were just friends, then we started going out with each other, and after a few months we realised we were in love. We got engaged<sup>6</sup> a couple of<sup>7</sup> years after we left university and then ...”

<sup>1</sup> a planned romantic meeting

<sup>5</sup> became friends with

<sup>2</sup> had a romantic relationship with

<sup>6</sup> formally agreed to marry

<sup>3</sup> the relationship ended

<sup>7</sup> two, perhaps three

<sup>4</sup> important romantic relationship



## B Marriage\*

“... we got married<sup>1</sup> the following year. We didn't want a big ceremony<sup>2</sup>, so we had the wedding<sup>3</sup> in the local church near Melanie's home with just family and a few friends. Afterwards we had the reception<sup>4</sup> in a small hotel nearby, and then went on our honeymoon<sup>5</sup> to Greece.”

\* the time when you are married

<sup>3</sup> the ceremony when people get married

<sup>1</sup> became husband and wife

<sup>4</sup> the wedding party

<sup>2</sup> an important public event

<sup>5</sup> a holiday just after getting married

(bride)groom

bride



## Common mistakes

She got to know Darren at university. (NOT She knew Darren at university.)

Now they plan to get married. (NOT They plan to get marry; or They plan to married.)

She's getting married to Darren next year. (NOT She's getting married with Darren next year.)

## C Children

“Just over three years later Melanie got pregnant, and our first child, Cal, was born just two days after our fourth wedding anniversary<sup>1</sup>. We had a big celebration<sup>2</sup>.”

<sup>1</sup> a day that is exactly one or more years after an important event

<sup>2</sup> a time when you do something you enjoy because it is a special day



## Language help

www.irLanguage.com

adjective	noun	verb	noun
engaged	engagement	celebrate	celebration
pregnant	pregnancy	marry	marriage

## D Divorce\*

“Things started to go wrong<sup>1</sup> when I got a job as manager of a sportswear company. I was working six days a week and I had to do a lot of travelling. It was difficult for Melanie as well. She was working during the week, then at weekends she was often alone / on her own<sup>2</sup> with two young children. I felt I couldn't give up<sup>3</sup> my job, and in the end Melanie decided to leave me<sup>4</sup>. The following year we got divorced<sup>5</sup>.”

\* when a marriage officially ends

<sup>1</sup> become a problem

<sup>2</sup> without other people

<sup>3</sup> stop doing

<sup>4</sup> stop living with me

<sup>5</sup> the marriage officially ended

# Exercises

## 15.1 Put the events in a logical order.

- I went out with Simon.
- We got married.
- I got pregnant three months later.
- We got engaged.
- I got to know Simon.
- Our son was born just after our first anniversary.
- We went on our honeymoon.
- I met Simon at a party.
- We had a big reception.

## 15.2 Which words are being defined?

- 1 The big party you have after the wedding. *reception*
- 2 A romantic meeting you plan before it happens.
- 3 The period of time when you are married.
- 4 How you describe a woman who is going to have a baby.
- 5 The day that is exactly one year, or a number of years, after an important event.
- 6 The name given to the woman and man on their wedding day. and
- 7 Stop doing a job or activity. something up

## 15.3 Complete the dialogues.

- 1 A: When did they get *engaged* ?  
B: Last week. They plan to get married in a ..... of years.
- 2 A: Where did they meet?  
B: I think he got ..... her at university.  
A: And now they're married?  
B: Yes, the ..... was last week.
- 3 A: Is it going to be a big wedding?  
B: No, they're having a small ..... in the village church.  
A: And what about the reception?  
B: They're having a reception but no ..... . They're going straight back to work.
- 4 A: So, it's all over.  
B: Yes. Lily ..... him and moved out last month.  
A: Oh dear. Have they had problems for a long time?  
B: I think it all started to go ..... when they moved to Woodbridge.  
A: And what about Oliver? Is he alone now?  
B: Yes, completely on ..... . He doesn't want any new relationships yet.  
A: But the marriage is definitely over?  
B: Yes, I'm afraid they're getting .....

## 15.4

### Over to you

Answer the questions for you, then, if possible, ask a friend and write their answers.

- 1 Can you remember your first date? (When, and who with?)
- 2 Can you remember your first serious relationship? (Who was it with? Did you break up, or are you still with the same person?)
- 3 Whose was the last wedding you went to?
- 4 What was the last big celebration (other than a wedding) that you went to?

# 16 Daily routines

## A Sleep

“During the week I usually wake up<sup>1</sup> about 7.30 am. If I don't, my mum wakes me up. I get up<sup>2</sup> a few minutes later. In the evenings I go to bed about 10.30 pm, and usually go to sleep<sup>3</sup> straight away<sup>4</sup>. If I have a late night<sup>5</sup> I try to have a sleep<sup>6</sup> in the afternoon when I get home from college.”

<sup>1</sup> stop sleeping

<sup>2</sup> get out of bed

<sup>3</sup> start sleeping; *syn* fall asleep

<sup>4</sup> immediately

<sup>5</sup> go to bed very late; *opp* have an early night

<sup>6</sup> a short period of sleeping, e.g. half an hour

## B Food

“I have coffee and cereal for breakfast, then have a light lunch<sup>1</sup>, maybe a sandwich and an apple, and a snack<sup>2</sup> in the afternoon. We have our main meal in the evening. If Mum's late home from work, she doesn't bother<sup>3</sup> to cook; we just get a takeaway<sup>4</sup> instead. One of us has to feed<sup>5</sup> the cat as well.”

<sup>1</sup> have a small meal

<sup>2</sup> a small amount of food you eat between meals

<sup>3</sup> doesn't do something because there is no reason or because it is too much work

<sup>4</sup> a meal you buy in a restaurant but eat at home

<sup>5</sup> give food



cereal

## C Bathroom routines

“I usually have a shower when I get home from college because my sister, Rosie, and my brother, Marcus, spend so much time in the bathroom in the morning. I only have time to have a wash, clean my teeth (*syn* brush my teeth) and put on a bit of make-up. In the winter I sometimes have a bath instead of<sup>1</sup> a shower. I like to lie in the bath and listen to music.”

<sup>1</sup> in place of (a shower)



Marcus having a shave



Rosie putting on make-up

## D Housework\*

“Fortunately<sup>1</sup> we've got a cleaner<sup>2</sup> who does a lot of the housework, and that includes doing my washing<sup>3</sup>. But I still have to make my bed and do some of my ironing, and I sometimes do the shopping with Mum.”

<sup>1</sup> the work of keeping a home clean and tidy

<sup>2</sup> happening because of good luck; *syn* luckily

<sup>2</sup> a person who cleans

<sup>3</sup> washing my clothes



ironing

## Language help

[www.irLanguage.com](http://www.irLanguage.com)

When we do the shopping we buy food at the supermarket; when we go shopping, it is a leisure activity and we perhaps buy clothes, DVDs, books, etc.

## E Spare time\*

“On weekdays I usually stay in<sup>1</sup> and watch TV in the evening. At the weekend I go out quite a lot with my friends, either to the cinema or just to a café, and I eat out<sup>2</sup> once a week. Sometimes friends come round<sup>3</sup> and we chat<sup>4</sup> about clothes, music and college.”

<sup>1</sup> time when you are not working

<sup>2</sup> stay at home

<sup>2</sup> eat in a restaurant; *opp* eat in

<sup>3</sup> visit me in my home

<sup>4</sup> have an informal conversation

# Exercises

16.1 Find seven more expressions with *have* + [noun] and *do* + [noun] from the opposite page.

have a shower ..... have ..... have ..... have .....  
do ..... do ..... do ..... do .....

16.2 Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

- |          |                                     |            |
|----------|-------------------------------------|------------|
| 1 get up | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | a the dog  |
| 2 fall   | <input type="checkbox"/>            | b my teeth |
| 3 make   | <input type="checkbox"/>            | c make-up  |
| 4 put on | <input type="checkbox"/>            | d a week   |
| 5 go     | <input type="checkbox"/>            | e the bed  |
| 6 clean  | <input type="checkbox"/>            | f to sleep |
| 7 feed   | <input type="checkbox"/>            | g early    |
| 8 once   | <input type="checkbox"/>            | h asleep   |

16.3 One word is missing in each sentence. What is it and where does it go?

- Does it cost much to have a cleaner to <sup>do</sup> the housework?
- My mother usually me up around 7:30, then I get up about 7:45.
- If I have a in the afternoon, I usually eat fruit instead of chocolate.
- I always go on Friday and Saturday, often to the cinema or a club.
- Sometimes friends round to the flat and we play computer games.
- I eat at the weekend, usually in a local Italian or French restaurant.
- I don't with a full meal at lunchtime; I usually just have a light lunch, like a salad.
- I often have for breakfast – usually cornflakes or something like that.
- I don't like doing housework; I have a husband who does most of it.
- When I get emails, I try to reply to them straight.

16.4 Complete the dialogue with a word or phrasal verb from the opposite page in each gap.

- A: Don't <sup>1</sup> ~~bother~~ ..... to cook dinner tonight.  
 B: Why not?  
 A: We could go out <sup>2</sup> ..... of eating here.  
 B: Yeah. Where?  
 A: Well, I'd like to try that new Korean restaurant.  
 B: That's miles away. No, I think I'd rather <sup>3</sup> ..... and have an <sup>4</sup> ..... night.  
 A: But it's Friday.  
 B: Yes, I know, but I'm tired. Why don't we ask Ryan and Charlotte to <sup>5</sup> ..... ?  
 You don't have to cook, we can order a <sup>6</sup> ..... . And we can have a nice <sup>7</sup> ..... round the dining table; much better than a noisy restaurant.

16.5

**Over to you** [www.irLanguage.com](http://www.irLanguage.com)

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

Find three facts from the opposite page that are similar in your routine, and three that are different. Complete the table.

similar	different
1 .....	.....
2 .....	.....
3 .....	.....

## A Location\*

“We live on the outskirts of town<sup>1</sup>, and it’s a very nice location. We used to live in the centre, but we moved<sup>2</sup> to our present flat when we had children because there’s more space<sup>3</sup> for them to play and it has nice views<sup>4</sup>.”

\* the place and position of something

<sup>1</sup> on the edge of town

<sup>2</sup> changed the place where we live

<sup>3</sup> an area that is empty or not used

<sup>4</sup> the things you can see from a place

## B Our flat

“This is where we live. We rent<sup>1</sup> a flat on the second floor. There’s a family in the flat downstairs<sup>2</sup>, and a young French couple upstairs, on the top floor. It’s a modern block of flats<sup>3</sup>, and it’s quite good, although the lift<sup>4</sup> is small, and there’s no air conditioning<sup>5</sup>.”

<sup>1</sup> pay money every week/month to use it because it isn’t ours

<sup>2</sup> on a lower level of a building

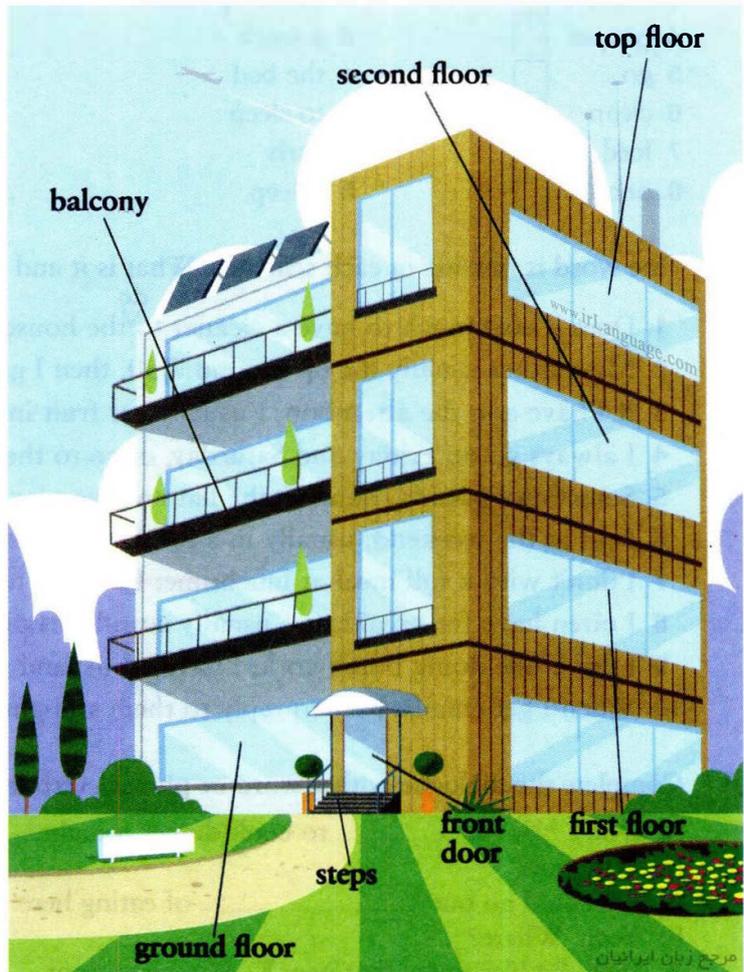
<sup>3</sup> a building with a number of flats in it

<sup>4</sup> the machine that takes people up or down a floor

<sup>5</sup> a system that keeps the air cool

## Language help

Flat is more common in British English; apartment is used in American English but is becoming more common in British English. Apartments are usually in large buildings; flats can be in a large building or part of a larger house.



## C A house in the country

“My parents own<sup>1</sup> a cottage<sup>2</sup>. It’s a charming<sup>3</sup> house and has lots of character<sup>4</sup>, but like many old buildings, it’s quite dark (*opp* light), quite difficult to heat<sup>5</sup>, and it doesn’t have central heating<sup>6</sup>.”

<sup>1</sup> they bought it

<sup>2</sup> a small house, that is old and attractive, and usually found in the country

<sup>3</sup> pleasant and attractive

<sup>4</sup> it is interesting and unusual

<sup>5</sup> make warm or hot

<sup>6</sup> a system that heats a whole house



cottage

# Exercises

17.1 Are the sentences about the people on the opposite page true or false? If the sentence is false, change it to make it true.

- 1 They live in a house. *False. They live in a flat.*
- 2 They used to live on the outskirts of town.
- 3 They own their flat.
- 4 They've got nice views from their flat.
- 5 They live on the first floor.
- 6 There's a lift in the building.
- 7 A French couple live downstairs.
- 8 They own a cottage.
- 9 The cottage has lots of character.
- 10 The cottage is quite cold.

17.2 Are these generally positive or negative features of a home?

- views *positive*      air conditioning      character  
 dark      charming      no central heating

17.3 Label the pictures.



- 1 *a block of flats*    2      3      4      5  
 6

17.4 Complete the sentences.

- 1 Our flat doesn't have air *conditioning*.
- 2 I live ..... the second floor, and my cousin lives ....., on the first floor.
- 3 My old flat was very small, but this one has much more .....
- 4 The flat's in a great ..... : it's near the centre of town but opposite a park and very quiet.
- 5 We live on the ..... of town, but it's only a twenty-minute walk to the centre.
- 6 The flat is on the third floor, but we can sit outside on the .....
- 7 It's a very big house, so it costs a lot of money to ..... in the winter.
- 8 I'm on the second ..... . I usually use the stairs, but take the ..... if I'm feeling lazy.
- 9 I live in Paris. I used to live in Marseilles, but I ..... to Paris when I left university.
- 10 I love my apartment. It has big windows, so it's nice and ..... inside.

17.5

## Over to you

Answer the questions about your home.

- 1 Do you live in a house or flat?
- 2 If you live in a flat, what floor is it on?
- 3 Do you own your home or rent it?
- 4 Are you in the centre, or on the outskirts of your town?
- 5 How long have you lived there?
- 6 Do you have these things:  
 air conditioning? central heating? a balcony?

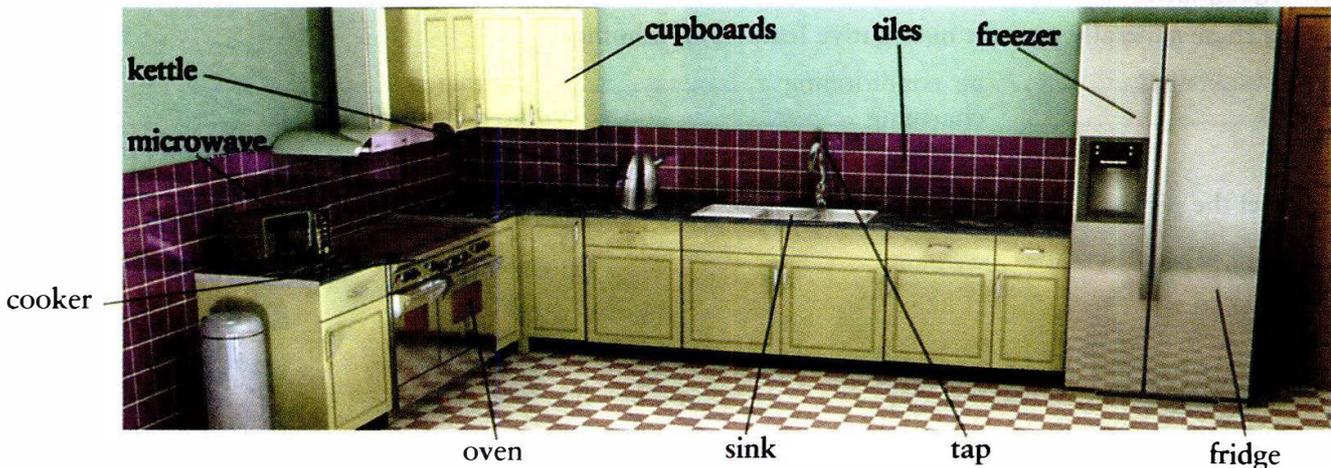
### A

#### Different homes

“When we first got married, we lived in a one-bedroom flat with a small kitchen, a living room and a bathroom. When our first child was born, she had to **share** our bedroom [use something at the same time as someone else]. Now we live in a four-bedroom house. Our bedroom has an **en suite bathroom** [a bathroom connected to the bedroom], our two teenage children have their own rooms [they do not have to share], we have a **spare** room for guests, and another bathroom. Downstairs, there’s a living room, a dining room and a **study** [a room where people can work]. We’ve also got a lovely big kitchen with a fridge/freezer, a cooker with two ovens and a **dishwasher** [a machine for washing dishes]. Next to it, there’s a small **utility** room where we keep the washing machine.”

#### Language help

We usually talk about a **sink** in the kitchen, but a **(wash)basin** in the bathroom.



### B

#### Choices\*

\* when you decide between two or more possibilities

### What do you prefer?

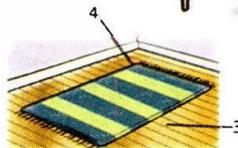
Some people like big soft **sofas**<sup>1</sup> with lots of **cushions**<sup>2</sup>,



some people like **firm** (opp soft) **armchairs**.



Do you like a **wooden floor**<sup>3</sup> with a **rug**<sup>4</sup>,



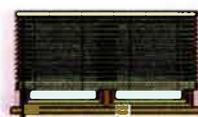
or a **carpet**?



**Curtains**,



or **blinds**?

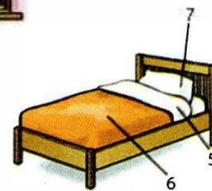


A **duvet**,



or a **sheet**<sup>5</sup> and a **blanket**<sup>6</sup>?

One **pillow**<sup>7</sup>, or two?



# Exercises

## 18.1 You are in the kitchen. Where would you put these things?

- 1 milk? *in the fridge*.....
- 2 food that you want to heat very quickly? .....
- 3 meat that you are going to cook? .....
- 4 dirty clothes? .....
- 5 dirty saucepans? .....
- 6 clean cups and saucers .....
- 7 frozen food that you want to keep for several weeks? .....

## 18.2 What are these things, and which room(s) do you usually find them in?

- 1 girdef *fridge, in the kitchen*.....
- 2 snik .....
- 3 nacistur .....
- 4 shiconus .....
- 5 ktelet .....
- 6 bashniswa .....
- 7 cparte .....
- 8 lipowl .....
- 9 shiwang chameni .....
- 10 kocero .....
- 11 chmariar .....
- 12 leits .....

## 18.3 Complete the sentences.

- 1 I'm happy with curtains or *blinds*..... ; I really don't mind.
- 2 We used to have a ..... floor, but it was a bit noisy so we put down a carpet.
- 3 When I got my new bedroom, my mum gave me a ..... of curtains or blinds.
- 4 My mum works at home, so she spends all day in the ..... on the computer.
- 5 As a child I had to ..... a room with my sister, but now I've got my ..... bedroom.
- 6 We often have guests to stay, but fortunately we've got a ..... room.
- 7 'Dad, there's no water coming out of the ..... in the kitchen sink.'
- 8 Some people like a sheet and ....., but I prefer a .....
- 9 There's a family bathroom, but I've got my own ..... shower room next to the bedroom.
- 10 Our kitchen is small but we have a ..... room for the washing machine.

## 18.4

### Over to you

Answer the questions. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

- 1 What have you got on your kitchen floor? .....
- 2 What have you got on the bathroom floor? .....
- 3 What have you got on the floor in the living room? .....
- 4 Have you got curtains or blinds in your bedroom? .....
- 5 Have you got a duvet or sheets and blankets on your bed? .....

## 18.5

### Over to you

Look at section B on the opposite page again. Which do you prefer, and why? Compare your answers with someone else if possible.

# 19 Everyday problems

## A There's something wrong with ...

We use these expressions when there is a problem with machines and other things we use.

There's **something wrong** with the TV. [there is a problem with it]

The light **isn't working**. [isn't functioning; there is no light]

The washing machine **isn't working properly**. [it is functioning, but not very well]

The coffee machine is **out of order**. [not in use, broken]

### Language help

We normally use **out of order** for a machine or system that is in a public building, not in the home, e.g. a drinks machine, a public telephone, a lift.

## B Problems at home

“I was making myself a cup of coffee yesterday. I **dropped**<sup>1</sup> the first cup on the floor and I had to clear it **up**<sup>2</sup>. I then made myself another cup, **slipped**<sup>3</sup> on the wet floor, and **spilt**<sup>4</sup> coffee **all over**<sup>5</sup> my T-shirt. I tried to **remove**<sup>6</sup> it with special washing powder, but it was **hopeless**<sup>7</sup>. I'll have to buy a new T-shirt.”

<sup>6</sup> get it off

<sup>7</sup> very bad and impossible to improve

“This morning I decided to have some toast. I **burnt**<sup>8</sup> the first two pieces, then I discovered we'd **run out of**<sup>9</sup> bread, so I went to work without any breakfast.”



<sup>8</sup> cooked something for too long

<sup>9</sup> there was no more of something

## C Out and about

“I was in a **bad mood**<sup>1</sup> because I hadn't had any breakfast, but things **got worse**<sup>2</sup> when I **missed** my bus and had to walk. It was raining, so I started running. I **fell over**<sup>3</sup> and **hit**<sup>4</sup> my knee on the ground. And when I got to work, I realised that I'd **torn**<sup>5</sup> my jacket, and I'd **left** some important notes at home.”

<sup>1</sup> feeling unhappy

<sup>2</sup> became more difficult and unpleasant

<sup>3</sup> fell to the ground

<sup>4</sup> touch something quickly, usually causing injury

<sup>5</sup> (see picture; **tear**, past tense **tore**, past participle **torn**)



### Common mistakes

I **left** my book at home, or I **forgot** my book.  
(NOT I forgot my book at home.)

# Exercises

## 19.1 Complete the verb forms with the correct past tense and past participle.

- 1 break / broke / broken
- 2 spill / ..... / .....
- 3 burn / ..... / .....
- 4 fall over / ..... / .....
- 5 run out / ..... / .....
- 6 tear / ..... / .....
- 7 hit / ..... / .....

## 19.2 Match the sentence beginnings on the left with the correct ending on the right.

- |                       |                                     |   |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------|---|
| 1 I dropped the radio | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | a on the desk.                            |
| 2 I've run out        | <input type="checkbox"/>            | b because the saucepan handle was so hot. |
| 3 I left              | <input type="checkbox"/>            | c all over the carpet.                    |
| 4 I tore my shirt     | <input type="checkbox"/>            | d and now it isn't working.               |
| 5 I spilt coffee      | <input type="checkbox"/>            | e the money.                              |
| 6 I hit my hand       | <input type="checkbox"/>            | f the money at home.                      |
| 7 I burnt myself      | <input type="checkbox"/>            | g and I don't think I can repair it.      |
| 8 I forgot            | <input type="checkbox"/>            | h of coffee.                              |

## 19.3 Complete the stories using words from the box, in the correct form.

spill slip remove fall worse over mood hopeless hit clear

Sophie <sup>1</sup> spilt tomato sauce all <sup>2</sup> ..... the kitchen floor, and her new dress. I tried to <sup>3</sup> ..... up the mess on the floor, while Sophie did her best to <sup>4</sup> ..... the marks on her dress. I'm afraid it was <sup>5</sup> ..... though, and she was in a really bad <sup>6</sup> ..... after that.

The two boys were running downstairs. First Sebastian <sup>7</sup> ..... on the bottom step and <sup>8</sup> ..... his knee as he landed on the floor, then Nico <sup>9</sup> ..... over and landed on top of Sebastian. It got <sup>10</sup> ..... when Rose fell over trying to help them stand up!

## 19.4 Write a different reply to each question using expressions from the opposite page.

- 1 I'm cold. What's wrong with the central heating? It isn't working.
- 2 How did you break that glass? .....
- 3 How did you hit your arm? .....
- 4 Why can't we watch that programme? .....
- 5 Where's your homework? .....
- 6 I can't hear the radio very clearly. What's wrong with it? .....
- 7 Why can't we use the lift? .....

## 19.5

### Over to you

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

Answer the questions. If possible, ask a friend and write their answers.  
Do you do these things? If so, what, why, and how often?

drop things	run out of things	fall over	forget things
burn food	spill things	leave things somewhere	

# 20 Money



## A Notes and coins

In the UK the **currency** [type of money used] is **sterling** [pounds]; in America it is the **dollar**; in much of Europe it's the **euro**.

### Notes

e.g. ten pounds, twenty euros  
a **ten-pound note**, a **twenty-euro note**

### Coins (in the UK)

e.g. fifty pence (usually spoken as **fifty p**),  
a **pound**, a **fifty-pence piece**, but a **one-pound coin**

## B Managing your money



“I've had a **bank account** for a few years now, and I make sure my account is always **in credit**<sup>1</sup>. I go to the **cashpoint** once a week, so I always have some **cash**<sup>2</sup> with me, and I **check**<sup>3</sup> my account online once a week to see how much money I've got.”



- <sup>1</sup> having money in the account
- <sup>2</sup> money in the form of notes and coins
- <sup>3</sup> look at the details of it

cashpoint

## C Money problems

“When I went to university, I had to get a **bank loan**<sup>1</sup> to pay my **fees**<sup>2</sup>. That meant I had to be careful and make sure I didn't **waste money**<sup>3</sup>, but by the time I finished my degree I **owed**<sup>4</sup> a lot. One good thing is that I don't have to pay it back until I get a job and I'm **earning**<sup>5</sup> a **reasonable amount**<sup>6</sup> of money. At the moment I'm **saving up**<sup>7</sup> for a new laptop; the one I have is very slow and keeps going wrong. I'd love to have a car as well, but I **can't afford**<sup>8</sup> it.”

- <sup>1</sup> money you borrow from a bank
- <sup>2</sup> receiving money for the work I do
- <sup>2</sup> money you pay to use something, or for a service, e.g. a lawyer's fee
- <sup>6</sup> quite a lot; \$1 million is a **large amount**
- <sup>3</sup> use it badly
- <sup>7</sup> keeping money to buy something in the future
- <sup>4</sup> had to **pay back** a lot of money to the bank
- <sup>8</sup> don't have enough money to buy one

## D Accommodation\*

“This year I'm **renting** a flat with three friends of mine. We had to pay one month's **rent** as a **deposit**<sup>1</sup>, but it's a nice place, quite **good value for money**<sup>2</sup>, and the landlord isn't **charging**<sup>3</sup> us to use his garage.”

- \* places where you live or stay
- <sup>1</sup> money you pay for something you are going to use, which is then returned to you when you have finished using it
- <sup>2</sup> good for the amount of money you pay
- <sup>3</sup> asking someone to pay an amount of money

### Language help

We use **rent** when we pay to use something for a long period of time, e.g. *rent a flat*. The noun **rent** is the amount you pay, e.g. *The rent is £400 per month*. We use **hire** when we pay to use something for a short period of time, e.g. *I hired a bike for the day*. Both verbs are used with cars, e.g. *We rented/hired a car when we were on holiday*.

# Exercises

## 20.1 Answer the questions as quickly as possible.

- 1 Is sterling a currency? Yes .....
- 2 Is a five-pound note worth less than a fifty-pence piece? .....
- 3 If you rent something, do you own it? .....
- 4 If you waste money, do you use it well? .....
- 5 Can you get money from a cashpoint? .....
- 6 If you are in credit, do you have money in your account? .....
- 7 Do you pay back a bank loan? .....
- 8 Is the currency in the United States of America called the euro? .....
- 9 Do you normally get back a deposit? .....
- 10 If you 'can afford' something, do you have enough money for it? .....

## 20.2 Which words are being defined?

- 1 A flat, usually round piece of metal used as money. coin .....
- 2 Money you borrow from a bank. ....
- 3 Money you pay to someone for a professional service, e.g. a school. ....
- 4 Money in the form of notes or coins. ....
- 5 Money you pay to live in a building that you don't own. ....
- 6 A machine where you can get money. ....
- 7 The type of money used in a country. ....

## 20.3 Rewrite the sentences without using the underlined words and phrases. Keep the same meaning.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 He's <u>getting</u> £300 a week in his job.   | He's <u>earning</u> £300 a week in his job. .... |
| 2 She <u>used</u> the money <u>badly</u> .      | She ..... ..                                     |
| 3 I <u>don't have enough money</u> to go.       | I ..... ..                                       |
| 4 We could <u>rent</u> a car.                   | We could ..... ..                                |
| 5 He <u>asked</u> us <u>to pay</u> £25.         | He ..... ..                                      |
| 6 <u>I've got to pay back</u> a lot of money.   | I ..... ..                                       |
| 7 I always <u>look at</u> my account carefully. | I always ..... ..                                |

## 20.4 Complete the text.

“I'm nearly 20 now, and I've been <sup>1</sup> saving up ..... for a car for the last two years. I've been putting money into my bank <sup>2</sup> ....., and I try to put in exactly the same <sup>3</sup> ..... every month: £75 from money that I <sup>4</sup> ..... doing a job two evenings a week, and £50 that my parents are lending me each month. That means I now <sup>5</sup> ..... them £1200, but they said I don't have to <sup>6</sup> ..... them ..... until I've got a full-time job. At the moment I'm still living at home, so I don't have to pay for my <sup>7</sup> ....., although I will start paying my parents a bit of rent when I finish college and get a job.”

## 20.5

### Over to you

Answer the questions.

- 1 Have you got a bank account? If so, how long have you had it?
- 2 How often do you check your account?
- 3 How often do you use a cashpoint?
- 4 Have you ever had a bank loan? What did you have the loan for?
- 5 Are you saving up for anything at the moment?
- 6 Do you rent the place where you live? If so, did you have to pay a deposit?

## A Common problems

What's the matter?	What you should do
A: I've got a <b>sore throat</b> <sup>1</sup> and a <b>temperature</b> . <sup>2</sup>	B: That sounds like <b>flu</b> . You should see a doctor.
A: I've <b>cut</b> my arm; it's <b>bleeding</b> . <sup>3</sup>	B: Put a <b>bandage</b> <sup>4</sup> round it.
A: I've got a terrible <b>cough</b> . <sup>5</sup>	B: Go to the chemist and get some cough <b>medicine</b> . [something you take to treat an illness]
A: I've got a <b>headache</b> .	B: Take some <b>tablets</b> <sup>6</sup> for the pain. (also <b>pills</b> )
A: I <b>feel sick</b> . <sup>7</sup>	B: Go to the bathroom quickly!



## B Describing pain

We can use different words to describe **pain**. An **ache** describes pain that is not always strong, but often continues. It is used with certain parts of the body.

I've got a **headache**. Simone's got **stomach ache**.

My dad **suffers from** [often has the pain of] **backache**.

For other parts of the body we often use **pain**.

I've got a **pain** in my shoulder/foot.

**Ache** can also be a verb to describe pain that continues for some time.

By the end of the day my feet were **aching**.

For stronger or more sudden pain, we usually use the verb **hurt**.

My throat **hurts** when I speak.

I hit my leg on the table and it really **hurts** / it's very **painful**.

## C Serious illnesses

For **serious** [bad] illnesses, you will probably go into hospital. A person who stays in hospital is called a **patient**. Many patients need an **operation** [when special doctors, called **surgeons**, cut into the body for medical reasons; also called **surgery**].

**Lung cancer** can be caused by smoking.

**Heart attacks** can happen very suddenly.

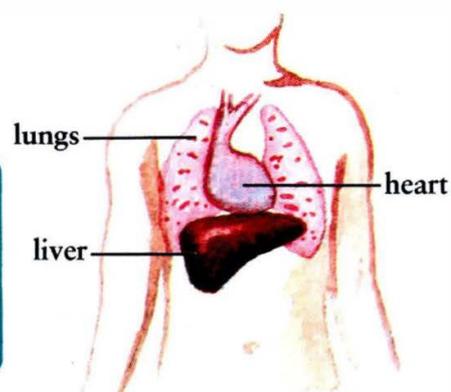
Hepatitis is a disease affecting the **liver**.

## Language help

**Disease** is used to talk about more serious medical problems, often affecting certain parts of the body, e.g. heart disease.

**Illness** is used to talk about serious and minor medical problems and those affecting the mind, e.g. mental illness.

**Disease** is not used about a period of illness, e.g. He died after a long illness. (NOT He died after a long disease.)



# Exercises

21.1 Look at the underlined letters in each pair of words. Is the pronunciation the same or different? Use the index to help you.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1 <u>a</u> che <u>p</u> ain .. <u>s</u> ame.....         | 5 <u>l</u> iver <u>d</u> isease .....     |
| 2 <u>c</u> old <u>s</u> tomach .. <u>d</u> ifferent..... | 6 <u>s</u> tomach <u>o</u> peration ..... |
| 3 <u>c</u> ough <u>t</u> hrough .....                    | 7 <u>ch</u> emist <u>a</u> che .....      |
| 4 <u>f</u> lu <u>c</u> ut .....                          | 8 <u>p</u> atient <u>b</u> andage .....   |

21.2 Complete the sentences with *a* or nothing (-).

- |                                  |                                    |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1 She's got ..... hepatitis.     | 6 I've got ..... backache.         |
| 2 I've got <u>a</u> ..... cough. | 7 Leona's got ..... flu.           |
| 3 I'm getting ..... sore throat. | 8 My uncle had ..... heart attack. |
| 4 Ben's got ..... headache.      | 9 She's got ..... cancer.          |
| 5 Luis's got ..... temperature.  | 10 I've got ..... pain in my foot. |

21.3 Complete the dialogues.

- 1 A: Does your finger hurt?  
B: Yes, it's very painful .....
- 2 A: What's wrong with Musa?  
B: He feels ..... I think it's something he ate.
- 3 A: Did you hit your foot?  
B: Yes, and it really .....
- 4 A: My hand's bleeding quite badly.  
B: Well, put a ..... round it.
- 5 A: Your finger's .....  
B: I know. I cut it using that knife.
- 6 A: Does Tanya still ..... from bad headaches?  
B: Yes, she gets them all the time.
- 7 A: What's the matter?  
B: My back ..... from sitting at that computer all day.
- 8 A: I understand Laura has had quite a ..... illness.  
B: Yeah. She was in hospital for over a week.

21.4 Find five more pairs of words. Why are they pairs?

<p><del>lung</del> heart surgeon tablets/pills attack liver                  operation <del>cancer</del> hepatitis sore medicine throat</p>
---

lung and cancer - because you can get lung cancer.

.....

.....

.....

.....

21.5

## Over to you مرجع زبان ایرانیان

Answer the questions. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

- 1 What do you usually do if you get a headache?
- 2 How often do you get a cough or a sore throat?
- 3 Have you ever been a patient in hospital? If so, what was it like?
- 4 Have you ever had surgery?
- 5 Are there some medicines you always keep in your home? What are they?

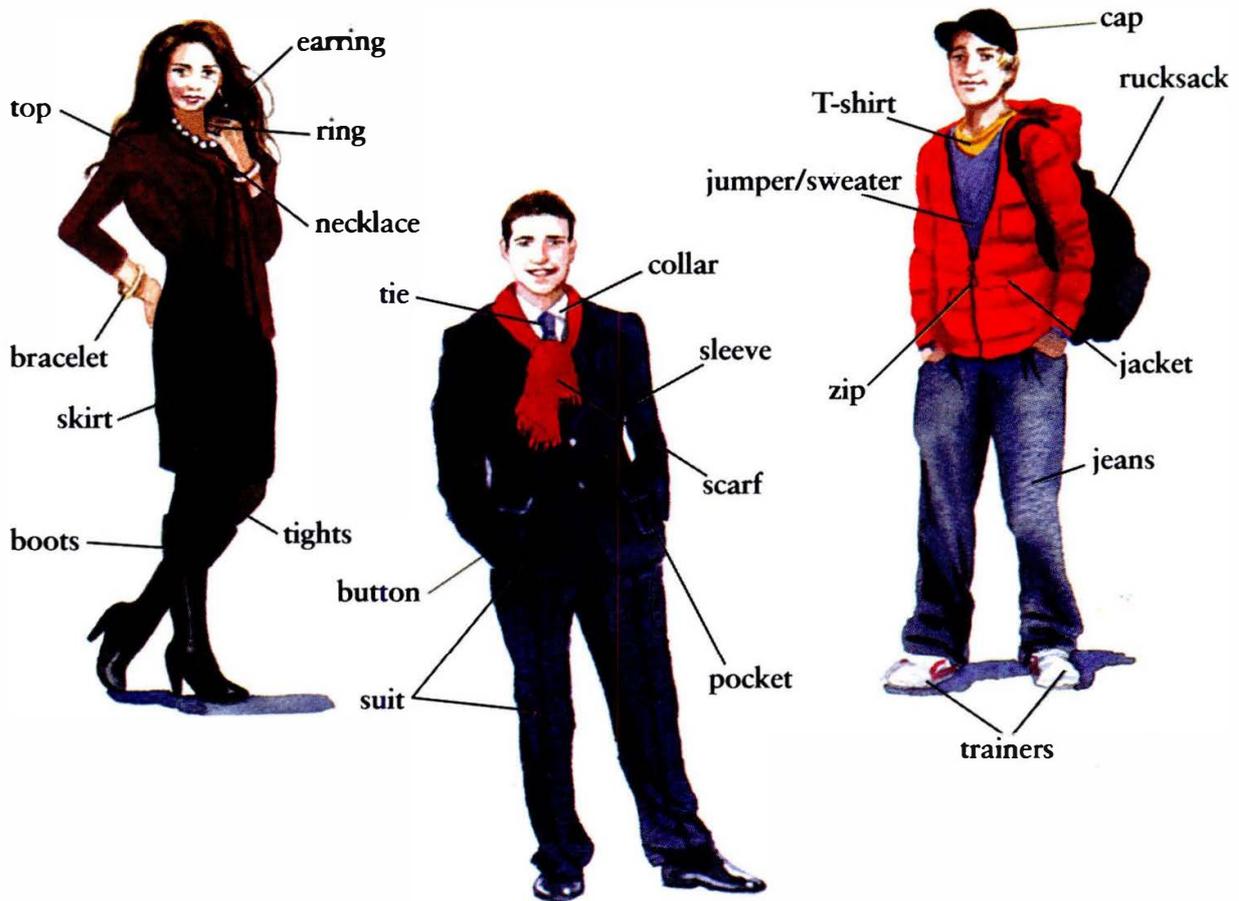
# 22 Clothes

## A Smart, stylish and casual

I think the woman looks **stylish**. [wearing nice clothes and looking attractive; also well-dressed]

The man is **smartly dressed**. [clean and tidy and suitable for formal situations]

The boy's clothes are more **casual**. [comfortable and suitable for informal situations]



## B Verbs and phrases used with clothes

As soon as I get up, I have a shower and get dressed [put on my clothes]. I don't eat breakfast.

I have to wear a suit and tie to work, but I usually take off my tie before lunchtime. [remove it; *opp* put something on]

When I get home from work, I usually change into a pair of jeans.

I think I look good in black because dark colours suit me. [I look good in dark colours; *opp* bright colours]

I prefer jackets with a zip; it's easier to undo a zip [open a zip, buttons, etc.] and it's also much quicker to do it up.

### Common mistakes

I like clothes. (NOT I like cloeth or cloeths.)

I like your new trousers. (NOT I like your new trowsers.)

# Exercises

## 22.1 Put the words into the correct columns.

boots earrings button top ring jumper bracelet scarf  
necklace zip pocket cap sleeve tights collar

items of clothing	jewellery	parts of clothing
boots		

## 22.2 Find five more things that are different in the pictures.

- The first woman is wearing a ring; the second isn't.
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....



## 22.3 Complete the sentences.

- Why don't you take **off**..... your coat?
- Anna looks really nice ..... purple.
- He was very smartly- ..... this morning. He had his best suit on.
- It took me ages to put ..... these boots.
- You should wear bright colours more often; they ..... you.
- Hiroko couldn't do ..... the zip on her jacket.
- I changed ..... a pair of jeans as soon as I got home.
- I took my tie off and ..... the top button of my shirt.
- My brother takes his books to school in a ..... . He says it's easier to carry them on his back.
- I had a quick shower, got ....., then joined the others for breakfast.

## 22.4

### Over to you

Women, answer these questions.

- What jewellery do you usually wear?
- Which colours suit you best?
- Do you prefer smart or casual clothes?
- Do you generally look quite stylish?
- Do you often wear a hat or a cap?
- Do you often wear T-shirts or trainers?

Men, answer these questions.

- How often do you wear a suit?
- How often do you wear a tie?
- Do you usually do up the top button of your shirt?
- Do you often change into jeans after school or work?
- Do you often wear a hat or a cap?
- Do you often wear T-shirts or trainers?

## A

## Fashion

## FASHION: Which are you?

- I usually **shop**<sup>1</sup> with a friend.
- I always **try on clothes**<sup>2</sup> before I buy them.
- I sometimes buy clothes that don't **suit me**<sup>3</sup>, just because they're **fashionable**<sup>4</sup>.
- If I buy trousers or a skirt, I buy a shirt or top to **go with**<sup>5</sup> it at the same time.
- My **wardrobe**<sup>6</sup> is full of clothes that I buy and hardly ever wear.
- I like to buy **designer labels**<sup>7</sup>, even though they're more expensive.
- I like wearing fashionable clothes, but the price has to be **reasonable**<sup>8</sup>.
- I never buy clothes just because they're **in fashion**<sup>9</sup>.
- I like to **dress in**<sup>10</sup> clothes that are casual but still look quite fashionable.
- I'm always happy with what I've **got on**<sup>11</sup>.

- <sup>1</sup> buy things in shops
- <sup>2</sup> put clothes on in a shop to see what they are like
- <sup>3</sup> look good on me
- <sup>4</sup> popular at that particular time
- <sup>5</sup> look good together
- <sup>6</sup> a large cupboard for keeping clothes in
- <sup>7</sup> clothes made by famous designers, e.g. Versace, Dolce & Gabbana
- <sup>8</sup> not expensive
- <sup>9</sup> fashionable
- <sup>10</sup> wear a particular type, style or colour of clothes
- <sup>11</sup> am wearing

### Language help

www.irLanguage.com

If two things **match**, they are a similar colour or type. If two things **go with** each other, they look good together.

*Catherine's bag **matches** her coat. Catherine's bag **goes with** her coat.*

If something **suits** you, it looks good on you. If something **fits** you, it is the right size.

## B

### In a clothes shop

A **shop assistant** [a person who works in a shop] is **servicing** different customers [helping them to buy things].

SHOP ASSISTANT: Can I help you?

CUSTOMER 1: No, I'm **being served**, thanks. [another shop assistant is already helping me]

SHOP ASSISTANT: Do you need any help?

CUSTOMER 2: Yes, I've just tried on this jacket in a size 12, and it didn't really **fit** me; it's a bit **tight**. [too small around the body; *opp* loose/big] Have you got it in a bigger size?

SHOP ASSISTANT: We have got a size 14, but not in pink, I'm afraid.

CUSTOMER 2: Oh, **that's a shame**. [that is disappointing; *syn* **that's a pity**] OK. I'll leave it, thanks. [I have decided not to buy it; *opp* I'll **take it/them**]

SHOP ASSISTANT: OK. I'm sorry about that. ... Can I help you?

CUSTOMER 3: Yes, I'm **looking for** a skirt and this looks nice. [I want to find a skirt] Can I try it on?

SHOP ASSISTANT: Yes, of course. The **changing rooms** are down there. [the place where you can try on clothes]

# Exercises

## 23.1 Are these pairs similar in meaning or different in meaning?

- 1 *in fashion* and *fashionable* ..... similar .....
- 2 *wardrobe* and *changing room* .....
- 3 *I'll take it* and *I'll leave it* .....
- 4 *match something* and *go with something* .....
- 5 *tight* and *loose* .....
- 6 *fit someone* and *suit someone* .....
- 7 *that's a shame* and *that's a pity* .....

## 23.2 Rewrite the sentences starting with the words given. Keep a similar meaning.

- |                                  |   |
|----------------------------------|---|
| 1 I often shop with my mother.   | I often go <u>shopping with my mother</u> ..... |
| 2 These watches are fashionable. | These watches are in .....                      |
| 3 Your top matches your skirt.   | Your top goes .....                             |
| 4 I like what I'm wearing.       | I like what I've .....                          |
| 5 Those trousers suit you.       | Those trousers look .....                       |
| 6 Are they the right size?       | Do they ..... ?                                 |
| 7 I'd like it to be quite loose. | I don't want it to be too .....                 |
| 8 She always wears black.        | She always ..... in black.                      |

## 23.3 Which words are being defined?

- 1 be the right size fit .....
- 2 not cheap, but not expensive .....
- 3 a large cupboard for keeping clothes in .....
- 4 popular with people at a particular time .....
- 5 the place where you try on clothes in a shop .....
- 6 Armani and Calvin Klein are examples of this .....
- 7 a person who works in a shop .....
- 8 look after customers and help them to buy things .....

## 23.4 Complete the dialogues.

- SHOP ASSISTANT: Can I help you?  
 CUSTOMER 1: I'm <sup>1</sup> looking for ..... a top. This one's quite nice. I think I'll  
<sup>2</sup> ..... it on.
- SHOP ASSISTANT: Of course. The <sup>3</sup> ..... room is just over there.
- SHOP ASSISTANT: Do you need any help?  
 CUSTOMER 2: No, I'm being <sup>4</sup> ..... , thanks.
- SHOP ASSISTANT: How was the top?  
 CUSTOMER 1: I'm afraid it didn't <sup>5</sup> ..... very well. It was a bit  
<sup>6</sup> ..... under the arms.
- SHOP ASSISTANT: Oh, that's a <sup>7</sup> ..... . Would you like a bigger size?  
 CUSTOMER 1: No, I don't think so. In actual fact, it wasn't just the <sup>8</sup> .....  
 I don't think it <sup>9</sup> ..... me, actually. I think it's really for a  
 younger person. I'll <sup>10</sup> ..... it, thanks.

## 23.5

### Over to you

Look at the text at the top of the opposite page again. Which statements are true for you?  
 If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

## In a supermarket



www.irLanguage.com

**How do supermarkets make us<sup>1</sup> spend more money?**

They put **fresh<sup>2</sup>** bread, as it smells lovely, near the **entrance<sup>3</sup>** to make us feel hungry – and hungry shoppers spend more. They also rearrange things and put them in different places; this makes us spend more time in the store and that means spending more money. They put sweets and chocolate near the checkout, so it is easy to add bars of chocolate to our basket or trolley while we are waiting in the **queue<sup>4</sup>**. And they put the most expensive **items<sup>5</sup>** on the middle shelves where you are more **likely<sup>6</sup>** to see them. And be careful of **special offers<sup>7</sup>**, e.g. three for the price of two. People often buy more than they need and **throw away** half of it.

<sup>1</sup> cause us to do or be something, e.g. *I don't like rain; it makes me depressed.*

<sup>2</sup> just made/cooked

<sup>3</sup> the place where you go into a building

<sup>4</sup> a line of people who are waiting for something

<sup>5</sup> an *item* is a single thing

<sup>6</sup> If you are likely to do something, you will probably do it.

<sup>7</sup> cheaper prices than normal

## Shopping centres and street markets

Some people like modern **shopping centres<sup>1</sup>** because everything is **under one roof<sup>2</sup>** and it is **convenient<sup>3</sup>**. There's a **wide range<sup>4</sup>** of shops, and if there is anything wrong with something you buy, the shop will **replace<sup>5</sup>** it, or give you a **refund<sup>6</sup>**.



Other people prefer going to **street markets** because they like the **atmosphere<sup>7</sup>** you get from the different stalls. Food and clothes are also usually cheaper in street markets. Sometimes you can try to agree a lower price for something you buy in a street market; we call this **haggling**. Of course, if you don't like what you buy in a street market, you can't normally take it back and get a refund.

<sup>1</sup> large covered shopping areas

<sup>2</sup> in one place

<sup>3</sup> practical and easy to use

<sup>4</sup> different things of the same type

<sup>5</sup> exchange it for another one

<sup>6</sup> money that is paid back to you when you return something

<sup>7</sup> the feeling in a place or situation

# Exercises

## 24.1 True or false? If a sentence is false, change it to make it true.

- 1 If you have a lot of things to buy, you need a basket.  
*False. If you have a lot of things to buy, you need a trolley.*
- 2 Supermarkets arrange things to make us spend more money.  
.....
- 3 The checkout is where you pay for things.  
.....
- 4 Expensive items are on the top shelves.  
.....
- 5 If something is fresh, it has just been made.  
.....
- 6 There are often lovely smells near the entrance.  
.....
- 7 Sweets are often near the checkout.  
.....
- 8 It's always a good idea to buy things on special offer.  
.....

## 24.2 Mark the main stress on these words. Use the index to help you.

'atmosphere    convenient    checkout    entrance    a refund    replace    item

## 24.3 Are these statements true of shopping centres, street markets, or both?

- 1 They are usually quite modern. *shopping centres*
- 2 Everything is under one roof. ....
- 3 You buy things from stalls. ....
- 4 You can haggle. ....
- 5 You can normally get refunds. ....
- 6 They can be very convenient. ....

## 24.4 Complete the sentences.

- 1 I took the shoes back to the shop, but they wouldn't give me a *refund*.
- 2 It ..... me angry when shops refuse to give you a refund or ..... things.
- 3 I often buy bananas but forget to eat them, and then I have to ..... them away.
- 4 When I got to the checkout, there was a long ..... of people waiting.
- 5 There's a special ..... on melons – buy one, get one free!
- 6 The vegetables are near the ....., where we came in.
- 7 I like that supermarket because they have a wide ..... of meat and cheese.
- 8 In my local street market, there's just a really nice ..... : it's very busy, but everyone is friendly and there's lots of colour.
- 9 I am more ..... to buy something if it's a special offer, because it seems cheaper.

## 24.5

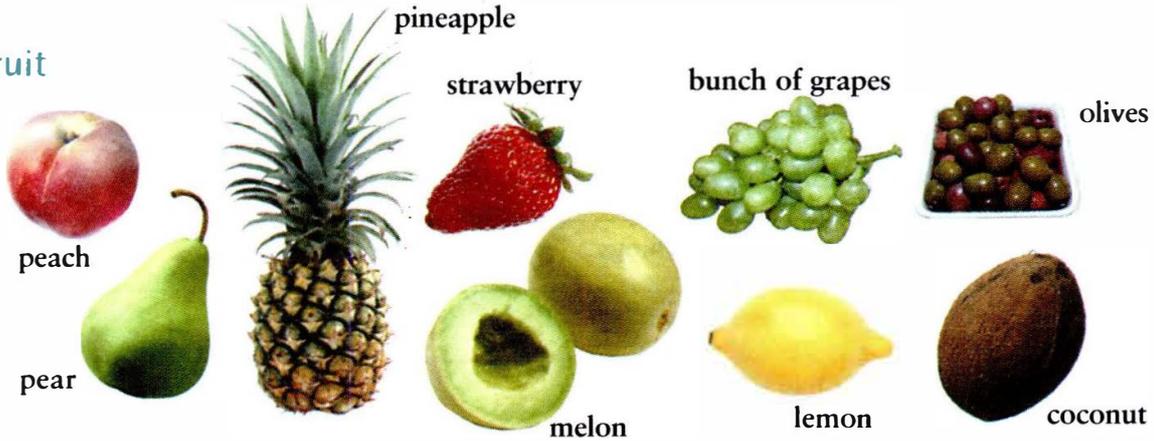
### Over to you

Answer the questions. If possible, ask someone else the same questions.

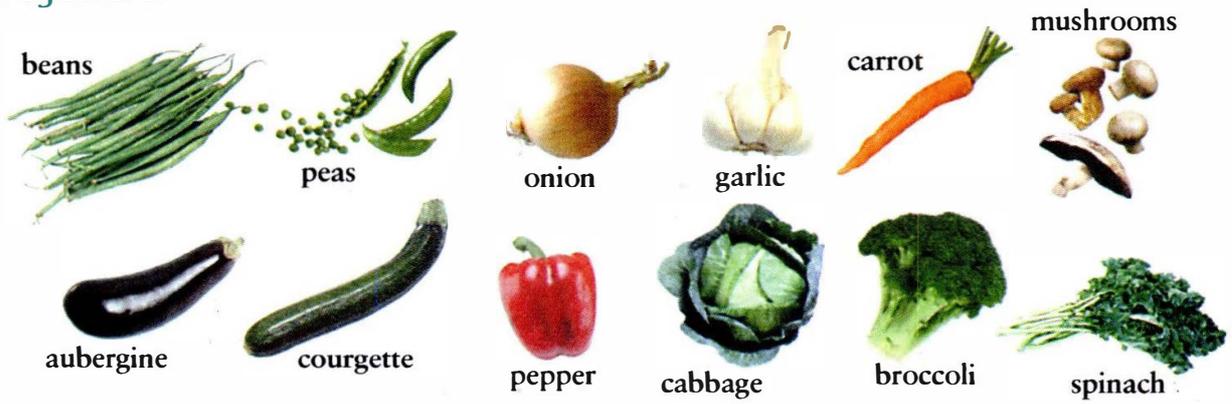
- 1 How often do you shop in supermarkets? What do you think of them?
- 2 How often do you go to shopping centres? Do you like them?
- 3 How often do you go to street markets? Do you like them?
- 4 Do you haggle for things when you're shopping?
- 5 Have you ever asked for a refund?

# 25 Food

## A Fruit

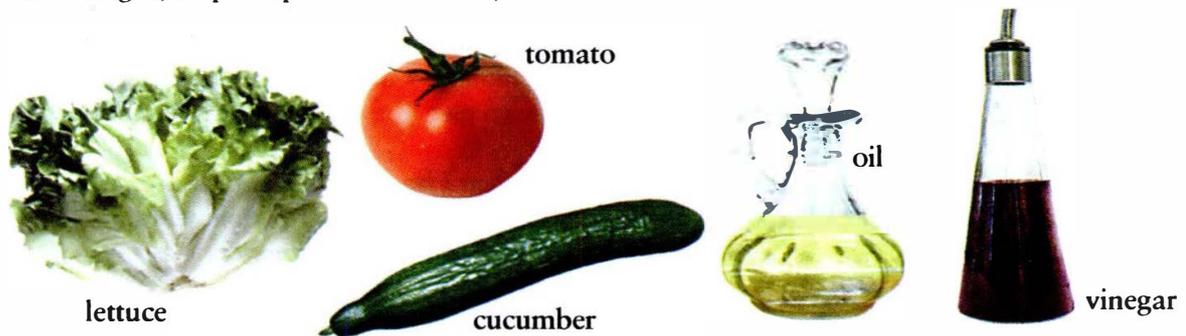


## B Vegetables



## C Salad

A salad is usually a mixture of uncooked ingredients. In Britain it mainly has lettuce, as well as tomato, cucumber, onion, and other things. We often put salad dressing (usually oil and vinegar, or perhaps oil and lemon) on salad.



## D Meat, fish and seafood

Animal:	cow	calf [young cow]	lamb [young sheep]	pig	chicken/hen
Meat:	beef	veal	lamb	pork	chicken

A person who does not eat meat is a vegetarian.



# Exercises

25.1 Write down one vegetable and fruit beginning with these letters.

	vegetable	fruit
1 the letter <i>p</i>	<u>peas</u> .....	.....
2 the letter <i>g</i>	.....	.....
3 the letter <i>m</i>	.....	.....
4 the letter <i>s</i>	.....	.....
5 the letter <i>o</i>	.....	.....

25.2 Find a word from each box where the underlined letters are pronounced the same.

carrot 1	onion	tomato	melon 1
lettuce	prawn	pork	chicken
aubergine	salmon	lamb	mushroom

25.3 Which is the odd one out in each group, and why?

1 pork	veal	<u>salmon</u>	beef	<u>salmon is a fish, the others are meat</u> .....
2 lettuce	cabbage	tomato	cucumber	.....
3 pork	lamb	beef	crab	.....
4 peach	onion	pepper	courgette	.....
5 crab	broccoli	mussels	prawn	.....
6 carrots	chicken	beans	aubergine	.....

25.4 Do you usually eat the skin (the outside) of these fruits? (Answer Yes, Sometimes or No.)

pineapple	<u>No</u> .....	peaches	.....
melon	.....	pears	.....
grapes	.....	lemon	.....

25.5 Answer the questions.

- 1 What do we call the meat from a cow, lamb, calf, and a pig? beef..... , .....
- 2 What's the main ingredient in a green salad? .....
- 3 What are the two most common things we put in salad dressing? ..... and .....
- 4 What do we usually call someone who doesn't eat meat? .....
- 5 What do we call a number of grapes that grow together? A ..... of grapes.

25.6

## Over to you

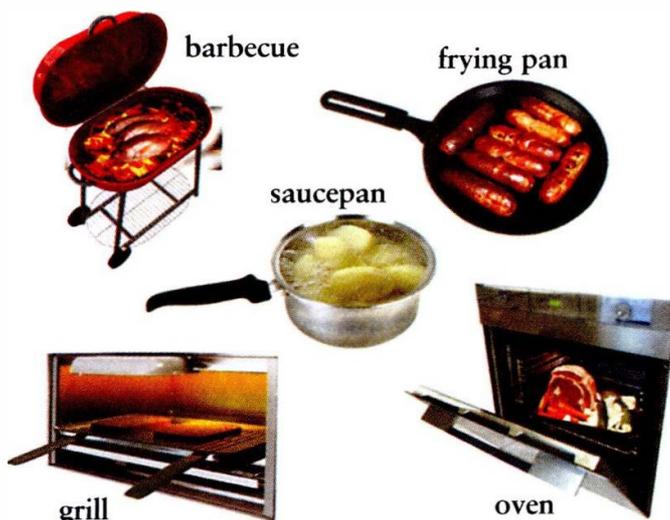
Using words from the opposite page, complete these sentences about yourself and your country. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

- 1 ..... is/are more common than .....
- 2 ..... is/are more expensive than .....
- 3 A mixed salad usually has ....., ....., .....
- 4 We don't often grow .....
- 5 We don't often eat .....
- 6 ..... is/are my favourite .....

# 26 Cooking

## A Ways of cooking food

You boil potatoes or rice in a **saucepan**.  
You can **fry** sausages in a **frying pan**.  
You **grill** toast or meat under a **grill**.  
You roast meat [using oil] in the **oven**.  
You also **bake** cakes [without oil] in the oven.  
You barbecue meat and fish on a **barbecue**.  
Food which is not cooked is **raw**.



## B Preparing and cooking food

Peel the potatoes [remove the skin] and boil them.  
While they're boiling, **chop** an onion. [cut it into small pieces]  
Fry the onion before **adding** some chopped tomatoes. [putting them together with the onions]  
Then **stir** it all for a few minutes. [move it around in a saucepan using a spoon]

## C What does it taste like?

**Chefs** [people who cook food in a restaurant as a job] always **taste** the food [put a small amount in their mouth to see what it is like] while they are cooking.  
I don't like the taste of too much garlic.  
I tried the soup and it tasted a bit strange.  
Michel's food is very **tasty**. [has a good taste]  
Indian food is a bit too **spicy** for me. [with a strong hot flavour]  
You get ice cream in different **flavours**. [the type of taste that food or drink has, e.g. vanilla, coffee, strawberry, etc.]  
Lena said her pasta was **horrible** [terrible, unpleasant], but I thought it was **delicious** [fantastic, with a wonderful taste].

### Language help

We use the word **sour** to describe the taste of lemons (*opp* **sweet**), but usually **bitter** to describe coffee that is strong and has a sharp unpleasant taste (*opp* **smooth**). Strong, dark chocolate can also be described as bitter, but this is not always negative.

## D Are you a good cook?

I'm a bit nervous when I cook, so I always follow a **recipe** [the cooking instructions for a particular dish, e.g. lasagne], and make sure I have all the right **ingredients** [the different food you need to make a particular meal] before I start. However, I am quite good at making **pies**, especially apple **pie**. (Pie is pronounced / / like 'my'.)



### Common mistakes

A person who cooks well is a good **cook** (NOT a good **cooker**). The **cooker** is the large piece of equipment you use for cooking. You could also say that you are **good/bad at** cooking (NOT good/bad **in** cooking), e.g. *I'm quite good at cooking fish*.

Also we 'cook' a type of food, e.g. *I'm cooking some beef*, but we 'make' a dish, e.g. *I'm making dessert*. (NOT *I'm cooking dessert*.)

# Exercises

26.1 Write down five more ways of cooking food.

boil....., ....., ....., ....., ....., .....

26.2 How do you pronounce the underlined letters? Use the index to help you.

<u>ch</u> ef	Is it like <u>sh</u> oe or <u>ch</u> ief?	shoe	<u>ov</u> en	Is it like <u>lo</u> ve or <u>lon</u> ely?
<u>ra</u> w	Is it like <u>no</u> w or <u>do</u> or?		<u>pie</u>	Is it like <u>pe</u> a or <u>lie</u> ?
<u>so</u> ur	Is it like <u>mo</u> re or <u>ho</u> ur?		<u>sau</u> cepan	Is it like <u>fo</u> ur or <u>flo</u> wer?

26.3 Cross out the wrong word in each sentence. Write the correct word at the end.

- The paella was very ~~tasteful~~. tasty.....
- My brother is a very good cooker. ....
- Don't forget to heat up the fry pan before you add the aubergine. ....
- This chocolate is very sour. ....
- I'm afraid my mother has never been very good in cooking. ....
- You can buy this ice cream in five different tastes. ....

26.4 Which words are being defined?

- The flavour that something has in your mouth when you eat it. taste.....
- A person who cooks food as their job. ....
- Having a good taste. ....
- The large piece of equipment in the kitchen for cooking food. ....
- The word to describe the taste of lemons. ....
- Not cooked. ....
- Having a fantastic taste. .... The opposite is .....

26.5 Explain what the person did, using the correct word.

- |  |                                      |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| 1 I got the list of food and cooking instructions.         | You got the <u>recipe</u> .....      |
| 2 I bought all the food I needed for the dish.             | You bought all the .....             |
| 3 First I removed the skin of the potatoes.                | You ..... the potatoes.              |
| 4 I cooked the potatoes in water.                          | You ..... the potatoes.              |
| 5 Then I cut the onions into small pieces.                 | You ..... the onions.                |
| 6 I cooked the onions in a frying pan.                     | You ..... the onions.                |
| 7 I put the potatoes together with the onion.              | You ..... the potatoes to the onion. |
| 8 I put in some milk and moved it round in the pan.        | You put in milk and ..... it.        |
| 9 Then I put a little in my mouth to see what it was like. | You ..... it.                        |

26.6

## Over to you

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

Answer the questions. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

- Do you eat these things in your country?  
a) raw fish b) roast beef c) fried rice d) baked potato e) barbecued chicken
- Do you like these things?  
a) bitter chocolate b) spicy food c) chocolate-flavoured ice cream d) the taste of garlic
- How often do you cook food on a barbecue?
- Are you a good cook? If so, what are you good at?

# 27 City life

## A The rush hour\*

“For me, the rush hour is the worst time of day. Everywhere is busy, and everyone seems to be in a hurry<sup>1</sup>. I usually drive to work, but sometimes I get stuck<sup>2</sup> in traffic jams<sup>3</sup>, and when I get to work I find there’s nowhere to park<sup>4</sup> because the car park<sup>5</sup> is already full. But if I get the bus, it takes me longer, and that makes the journey very stressful<sup>6</sup>. When I get home in the evenings I often feel exhausted<sup>7</sup> – more from the travelling than from my work.”

\* the time when people travel to and from work

<sup>1</sup> want to go somewhere / do something quickly

<sup>2</sup> become unable to move or go anywhere

<sup>3</sup> long lines of cars that are not moving

<sup>4</sup> no place to leave the car

<sup>5</sup> place to leave a car

<sup>6</sup> causing a lot of worry

<sup>7</sup> very tired

### Common mistakes

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

The situation was **stressful**, and I was very **stressed** (NOT I was **stressing**, or it was **stressing**).

I couldn't find a **car park**. OR I couldn't find a **parking space**. (NOT I couldn't find a **parking**.)

## B The nightlife\*



“One of the advantages of<sup>1</sup> living in the city is the **nightlife**. The **town centre** is always **lively**<sup>2</sup> in the evening, and there is a **wide variety of**<sup>3</sup> bars, clubs and restaurants to go to. If you are more interested in **culture** and **cultural activities**, you can go to the cinema, the theatre, concerts, art galleries, etc.”

\* places to visit in the evening for social reasons

<sup>1</sup> the positive things about a situation;

*opp* disadvantages

<sup>2</sup> full of activity

<sup>3</sup> many different things

## C Advantages and disadvantages

“Cities always seem **crowded**<sup>1</sup>, and they can be **dirty** (*opp* clean) and **dangerous** (*opp* safe) places to live. **Pollution**<sup>2</sup> is worse in big cities, and so is the **crime rate**<sup>3</sup>. I only walk home at **night**<sup>4</sup> if I’m with a friend. When I’m on my own, I get a taxi.

Life in cities is also more expensive. Flats cost a lot, and I think you get better **value for money**<sup>5</sup> in a smaller town or village.

On the positive side, you get<sup>6</sup> a real **mix**<sup>7</sup> of people and nationalities in a big city; that makes life more interesting. I also enjoy the fact that there’s always something going on<sup>8</sup> in a big city, so life is never **dull**<sup>9</sup>.”

<sup>1</sup> full of people; *opp* quiet

<sup>2</sup> dirty air and water

<sup>3</sup> the number of crimes that happen

<sup>4</sup> in the period when it is dark

<sup>5</sup> If something is **good value for money**, you are happy with what you receive for the amount of money you pay.

<sup>6</sup> you find / there exists

<sup>7</sup> different types

<sup>8</sup> happening

<sup>9</sup> boring; *opp* exciting

# Exercises

## 27.1 Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

- |           |                                     |             |
|-----------|-------------------------------------|-------------|
| 1 town    | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | a for money |
| 2 traffic | <input type="checkbox"/>            | b hour      |
| 3 night   | <input type="checkbox"/>            | c rate      |
| 4 value   | <input type="checkbox"/>            | d centre    |
| 5 crime   | <input type="checkbox"/>            | e space     |
| 6 rush    | <input type="checkbox"/>            | f jam       |
| 7 car     | <input type="checkbox"/>            | g life      |
| 8 parking | <input type="checkbox"/>            | h park      |

## 27.2 Write the opposite.

- |   |                                 |
|---|---------------------------------|
| 1 It's safe. <u>It's dangerous.</u> ..... | 4 It was very exciting. ....    |
| 2 It was crowded. ....                    | 5 There are advantages. ....    |
| 3 It's very clean. ....                   | 6 There's a place to park. .... |

## 27.3 Complete the dialogues with one word in each gap.

- A: Is there plenty to do in the evening?  
B: Yes, the nightlife ..... is great.
- A: And are there lots of ..... activities in the town?  
B: Yes. There's a cinema, theatre, concerts, and so on.
- A: Is it good for shopping?  
B: Yes, there's a ..... of shops.
- A: Are you worried about walking home late in the evening?  
B: Yes, it can be dangerous at .....
- A: Is the traffic bad?  
B: Yes, I often get ..... in traffic jams.
- A: Is your flat expensive?  
B: Well, it's not cheap but I think it's quite good ..... for money.

## 27.4 Rewrite the sentences without the underlined words. Keep the meaning the same.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1 There were <u>different types</u> of people there. | There was a good <u>mix</u> ..... of people there. |
| 2 I was <u>very tired</u> .                          | I was .....  |
| 3 I was very <u>nervous and worried</u> .            | I was very .....                                   |
| 4 The place is always <u>full of activity</u> .      | The place is always very .....                     |
| 5 The <u>air is dirty</u> .                          | There's a lot of .....                             |
| 6 They want to do everything <u>very quickly</u> .   | They want to do everything in a .....              |
| 7 There was nowhere to <u>leave the car</u> .        | There was nowhere to .....                         |
| 8 There isn't much <u>happening</u> here.            | There isn't much ..... here.                       |
| 9 Poverty <u>doesn't exist</u> here.                 | You don't ..... here.                              |

## 27.5

### Over to you

Answer the questions. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

- What's the rush hour like where you live?
- What's the nightlife like in your town?
- Is it good for cultural activities?
- Is there much pollution?
- Is the crime rate bad?
- What are the advantages/disadvantages of where you live?

## A Surrounded by nature

“I grew up in the countryside where I was surrounded by<sup>1</sup> nature. As children, we used to play on the banks<sup>2</sup> of the river and in the woods<sup>3</sup>. In the summer we picked<sup>4</sup> apples and blackberries; in the autumn we often picked mushrooms. The seasons<sup>5</sup> were all different, and I loved the scenery<sup>6</sup>, the open spaces<sup>7</sup>, and the fresh air<sup>8</sup>. I still do.”

<sup>1</sup> nature was everywhere around me

<sup>2</sup> the side of the river

<sup>3</sup> groups of trees

<sup>4</sup> took them from the tree/plant

<sup>5</sup> spring, summer, autumn, winter

<sup>6</sup> the natural beauty you see around you

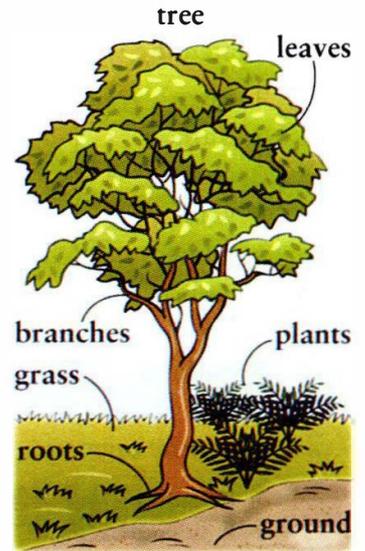
<sup>7</sup> empty areas of land

<sup>8</sup> naturally clean air

## Common mistakes

I like being in the countryside. OR I like being surrounded by nature.  
(NOT I like being in the nature.)

مرجع زبان ایرانیان



## B Working in the country

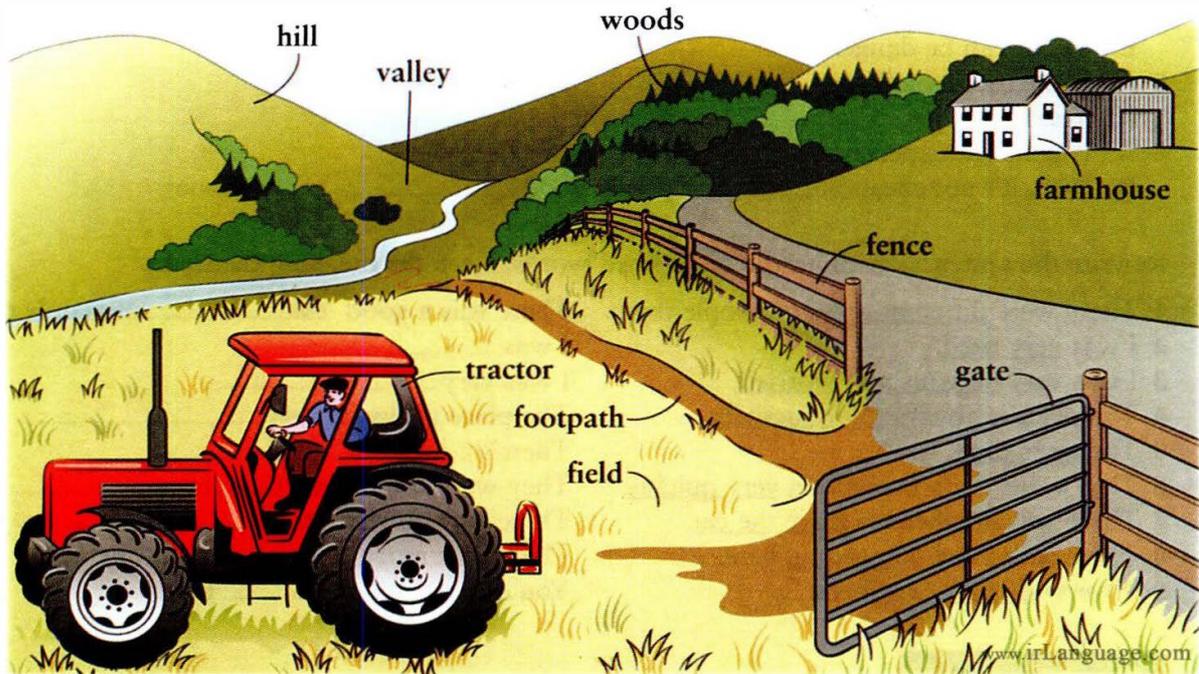
“My uncle owns<sup>1</sup> a farm. He keeps<sup>2</sup> a few animals, but mostly he grows crops like rice, wheat and potatoes. Farming is a hard life: my uncle is usually up<sup>3</sup> at five in the morning, and sometimes his work isn't finished until sunset<sup>4</sup>.”

<sup>1</sup> has (something that legally belongs to him)

<sup>2</sup> owns and looks after them

<sup>3</sup> not in bed

<sup>4</sup> when the sun goes down in the evening



## C The disadvantages of country life

“The worst thing about living in a village<sup>1</sup> is that there isn't much to do in the evening, apart from going to the village pub. The nearest town is eight miles away<sup>2</sup>, and public transport<sup>3</sup> is hopeless<sup>4</sup>. And, of course, you don't get<sup>5</sup> many shops in a village.”

<sup>1</sup> a place smaller than a town

<sup>2</sup> a distance from a place

<sup>3</sup> buses and trains for people to use

<sup>4</sup> terrible

<sup>5</sup> there aren't / you don't find

# Exercises

28.1 These things all grow, but what are they? Put the letters in the right order.

- |          |              |            |       |
|----------|--------------|------------|-------|
| 1 seret  | <u>trees</u> | 5 tnpal    | ..... |
| 2 sargs  | .....        | 6 toros    | ..... |
| 3 velase | .....        | 7 chesranb | ..... |
| 4 odows  | .....        | 8 roscp    | ..... |

28.2 Complete the dialogues.

- A: It must be beautiful when the sun goes down over the valley.  
B: It is. The sunsets ..... are lovely here.
- A: Have you ever lived in a town?  
B: No, I've always lived in the .....
- A: Is Dad ..... yet?  
B: He must be. He's not in bed.
- A: Is it your dad's farm?  
B: No, he doesn't ..... it. He's just the farm manager.
- A: Do you enjoy the summer?  
B: Yes, but spring is my favourite .....
- A: Did it rain a lot last night?  
B: Yes. When I went outside this morning, the ..... was very wet.
- A: Do they ..... many animals?  
B: Yes, they've got sheep, cows and goats.

28.3 Look at the picture in section B again, then cover it and complete the text.

We walked alongside the <sup>1</sup>fence ....., opened the <sup>2</sup> ....., and said 'hello' to the man on the <sup>3</sup> ....., We then followed the <sup>4</sup> ..... across the <sup>5</sup> ..... and down into the <sup>6</sup> ....., We stopped and had a picnic by the river. After that, we walked up through the <sup>7</sup> ..... and then finally back to the <sup>8</sup> ....., where we stopped and bought some eggs.

28.4 Cover the left-hand page. Complete the advantages and disadvantages of living in the country.

Some of the best things about living in the country are:

- the beautiful <sup>1</sup>scenery .....
- the open <sup>2</sup> .....
- the fresh <sup>3</sup> .....
- being able to go out and <sup>4</sup> ..... fruit
- the fact you are <sup>5</sup> ..... by nature.

Some of the <sup>6</sup> ..... things about living in the country are that:

- you don't <sup>7</sup> ..... many shops
- <sup>8</sup> ..... transport is <sup>9</sup> .....
- there isn't <sup>10</sup> ..... to do in the evening, and the nearest town might be a long way <sup>11</sup> .....

28.5

## Over to you

What do you think are the advantages and disadvantages of living in the countryside? Do you agree with the ideas above? Can you think of any other advantages and disadvantages? If possible, discuss your ideas with someone else.

## A

### Vehicles

Vehicle is the general word for all types of road transport.



bus



coach



lorry (also called truck)



van



bicycle



motorbike

## B

### Travelling around

bus/coach	train	plane	taxi	bicycle
bus/coach driver	train driver	pilot	taxi driver	cyclist
(£) bus fare	train fare	airfare	fare	
get / catch / go by	get / catch / go by	fly	get/take	go by bike / cycle / ride a bike
get on/off	get on/off	get on/off	get in / out (of)	get on/off
bus stop / bus station	platform / train station	airport	taxi rank	
journey	journey	flight		www.irLanguage.com

I go to work by **bus**. It's only three stops.

We got the **train** to Cardiff, but the **journey** was terrible.

When the **bus fares** went up last month, my dad started cycling to work.

I got **out** of the taxi and almost walked away without paying the **fare**.

If there are more **flights**, **airfares** should be cheaper.

We were going to get the **train** to Paris, but in the end we decided to **fly**.

### Common mistakes

It was a good **journey**. (NOT It was a good ~~travel~~.)

## C

### Are you happy with public transport?\*

Where I live buses are not very **convenient**<sup>1</sup>; the nearest bus stop is half a mile **away**<sup>2</sup>. And when I do get the bus, I often have to **wait in a queue**<sup>3</sup> for about twenty minutes, and then three come along at the same time!

\* buses and trains for people to use

<sup>1</sup> near or easy to use

<sup>2</sup> the distance from a place

<sup>3</sup> stand in a line

People are always **complaining about**<sup>4</sup> the bus service, but where I live it's good. I've got a bus stop **round the corner**<sup>5</sup> and buses **run** every ten minutes for most of the day, and they're usually **reliable**<sup>6</sup>.

<sup>4</sup> saying they are unhappy / not satisfied with

<sup>5</sup> very near

<sup>6</sup> you can trust them

I get the train to work. Trains are expensive – a **return**<sup>7</sup> to Oxford is twenty pounds – but I've got a **season ticket**<sup>8</sup>, and that makes it cheaper. My only real **complaint** is that if I **miss**<sup>9</sup> my train, I have to wait half an hour for the next one.

<sup>7</sup> a ticket for a journey to a place and back

<sup>8</sup> a ticket you can use many times within a period of time without paying each time

<sup>9</sup> don't catch (a train or bus)

# Exercises

## 29.1 Choose the correct word(s) to complete the sentences.

- 1 We were late, so we had to get / catch a taxi.
- 2 You mustn't *ride* / *drive* a motorbike without a helmet in the UK.
- 3 She told him to *get in* / *get on* the car and fasten his seat belt.
- 4 The *journey* / *travel* to the airport takes half an hour.
- 5 Trains to the airport *travel* / *run* every half hour.
- 6 The pilot didn't want to *drive* / *fly* the plane in such bad weather.
- 7 They left a bit late and *lost* / *missed* the bus.
- 8 I see that train *fares* / *tickets* are going up again.
- 9 You mustn't speak to the bus *pilot* / *driver* when he is driving.
- 10 We must get *off* / *out* the bus at the next *station* / *stop*.

## 29.2 Test your knowledge. Can you label the vehicles without looking at the opposite page?



1 bus .....



3 .....



5 .....



2 .....



4 .....



6 .....

## 29.3 Complete the sentences.

- 1 I wasn't happy with the service, so I made a complaint .....
- 2 The flight was fine but we had a terrible ..... from the airport to our hotel.
- 3 Where I live, the public transport is not very ..... because the nearest bus stop is two kilometres ....., and there are no trains at all.
- 4 The train station is just round the ..... from where I live.
- 5 Buses are not very ..... Sometimes they come every five minutes, but other times you have to wait for forty minutes.
- 6 When I got to the bus stop there was a long ..... of people.
- 7 Train fares are crazy: a ..... to Glasgow costs more than two singles.
- 8 People are always ..... about the buses, but I don't think they're that bad.
- 9 I use the trains every day for work, so I've got a ..... ticket.
- 10 Your train is going to depart from ..... six at 10:25.

## 29.4

### Over to you

Answer the questions about transport in your country. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

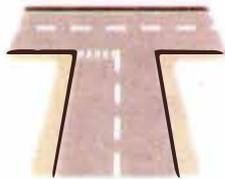
- 1 Are trains more reliable than buses?
- 2 Are return tickets usually twice the price of a single?
- 3 Is where you live convenient for public transport? Why? / Why not?
- 4 Do you have a season ticket for the bus or train? Does it save you much money?
- 5 How often do you take a taxi? Why, and where do you go to?
- 6 How often do you ride a bike?

# 30 On the road

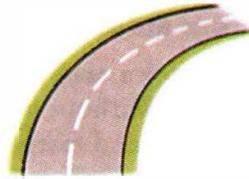
## A Roads



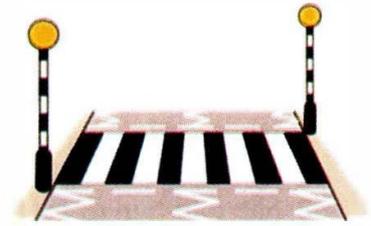
traffic lights



(road) junction



a bend in the road  
(this road bends  
to the right)

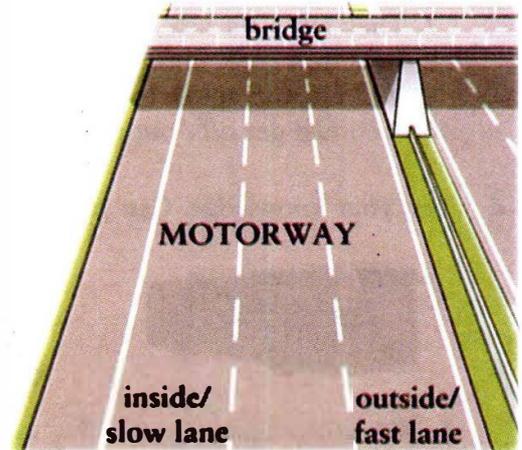


pedestrian crossing



no overtaking  
[you can't pass  
another car]

speed limit



## B Finding your way

“Yesterday, I got lost<sup>1</sup> on my way to<sup>2</sup> the airport. I decided to use side roads and go via<sup>3</sup> the village of Pensford, but I took the wrong turning<sup>4</sup> just before I got there, and I ended up<sup>5</sup> in a supermarket car park. Fortunately I was able to ask someone the way<sup>6</sup>, and a very kind woman directed<sup>7</sup> me to the A38, where I could then follow signs for the airport.”

<sup>1</sup> didn't know where I was

<sup>2</sup> while I was going to (the airport)

<sup>3</sup> go through somewhere to get to a destination

<sup>4</sup> corner where one road meets another

<sup>5</sup> found myself in a place I didn't expect to be in

<sup>6</sup> ask how to get to a place

<sup>7</sup> told me how to get to a place

## C An accident

“I saw an accident this morning on the main road<sup>1</sup> into town. A pedestrian<sup>2</sup> – a young boy – stepped off the pavement<sup>3</sup> and into the road just as a car was approaching<sup>4</sup>. The driver braked<sup>5</sup>, but the car swerved<sup>6</sup> and crashed into a parked car<sup>7</sup> on the opposite side of the road. Fortunately the driver wasn't injured but both cars were quite badly damaged.”

<sup>1</sup> important road

<sup>2</sup> a person walking

<sup>3</sup> the place where pedestrians walk

<sup>4</sup> coming closer

<sup>5</sup> put his foot on the **brake** to stop the car

<sup>6</sup> changed direction suddenly and without control

<sup>7</sup> a car next to the pavement, not moving



### Language help

You **damage** a thing [harm or break it] but **injure** a person [hurt them]. The related nouns are **damage** and **injury**, e.g. *There was a lot of damage to the bike, but the cyclist only had minor injuries.*

# Exercises

## 30.1 Which words are being defined?

- 1 part of a road that is separated from other parts by a line *lane*.....
- 2 people who are walking .....
- 3 the place where people usually walk .....
- 4 the place where people can cross the road .....
- 5 the place where two roads meet .....
- 6 the thing you put your foot on to stop a car .....
- 7 a message or symbol beside the road that gives information .....

## 30.2 Complete the information for these road signs.

			
1 50 mph <i>speed</i> ..... limit	3 .....	5 end of .....	7 a ..... in the road
			
2 there is only one .....	4 no .....	6 low .....	8 .....

## 30.3 Rewrite the sentences on the left starting with the words given. Keep a similar meaning.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1 I asked him how to get to the bank.              | I asked him the <i>way</i> ..... to the bank. |
| 2 I didn't know where I was in the town centre.    | I got ..... in the town centre.               |
| 3 You can ask someone to tell you how to get here. | You can ask someone to ..... you.             |
| 4 I went through Ledbury to get to Malvern.        | I went to Malvern ..... Ledbury.              |
| 5 I was going to the station.                      | I was on my ..... to the station.             |
| 6 We arrived unexpectedly by the river.            | We ..... up by the river.                     |
| 7 I turned left instead of right.                  | I took the wrong .....                        |

## 30.4 Complete the text.

I was on the <sup>1</sup> *main*..... road into town today and I saw an <sup>2</sup>.....  
I was <sup>3</sup>..... a roundabout when the guy behind tried to <sup>4</sup>.....  
me and the driver in front of me. He was driving too fast – over the <sup>5</sup>.....  
limit – and he lost control of the car. He had to <sup>6</sup>..... to avoid a car on the  
other side of the road, and in the end he <sup>7</sup>..... into a tree. The car was badly  
<sup>8</sup>....., but to my surprise, the man got out of the car with no <sup>9</sup>.....  
at all.

## 30.5

### Over to you

Answer the questions about your own country. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

- 1 Do you have a speed limit on motorways? If so, what is it?
- 2 How many lanes do motorways usually have?
- 3 Do drivers usually stop for pedestrians at pedestrian crossings? If not, why not?
- 4 Do many people park their cars on the pavements? Why? / Why not?

## A Notices



on a machine that is not working, e.g. vending machine (above)



in the window of a hotel; the hotel is full



outside a theatre; all the tickets have been sold



outside a museum; you can go in free

## B Do this!



wait in a line on the other side of this notice, e.g. in a bank or post office



stay on the right side, e.g. on the underground



do not walk on the grass



be quiet, an exam is happening now

## C Don't do this!



you cannot leave your car here



you cannot go in here



you cannot go out here



on a hotel door; leave me to sleep



don't put a bag down and walk away



do not give food to the animals

## D Warnings\*



Take care you don't hit your head on a low door.



Be careful. There's a step.



be careful, this parcel will break easily

\*something that tells you that something bad may happen

# Exercises

31.1 Complete these notices and warnings. More than one answer may be possible.

- |                    |                              |
|--------------------|------------------------------|
| 1 NO PARKING ..... | 7 PLEASE QUEUE .....         |
| 2 MIND THE .....   | 8 MIND YOUR .....            |
| 3 ADMISSION .....  | 9 PLEASE DO NOT .....        |
| 4 OUT OF .....     | 10 KEEP OFF .....            |
| 5 NO .....         | 11 KEEP .....                |
| 6 DO NOT .....     | 12 SILENCE EXAMINATION ..... |

31.2 Where could you see these notices or warnings?



1 On a door in a public building.



4 .....



6 .....



2 .....



5 .....



7 .....



3 .....

31.3 What notice could you see in each of these places?

- 1 on the underground
- 2 in a waiting area in a busy airport
- 3 on the door of a hotel room at 9 am
- 4 in front of garage doors
- 5 above the window of a train
- 6 on a door going into a low room
- 7 outside a museum or art gallery
- 8 outside a room where students are doing an exam

Keep right .....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

31.4 Write down five more notices from the opposite page that you could see in a school or college.

Mind your head .....

.....

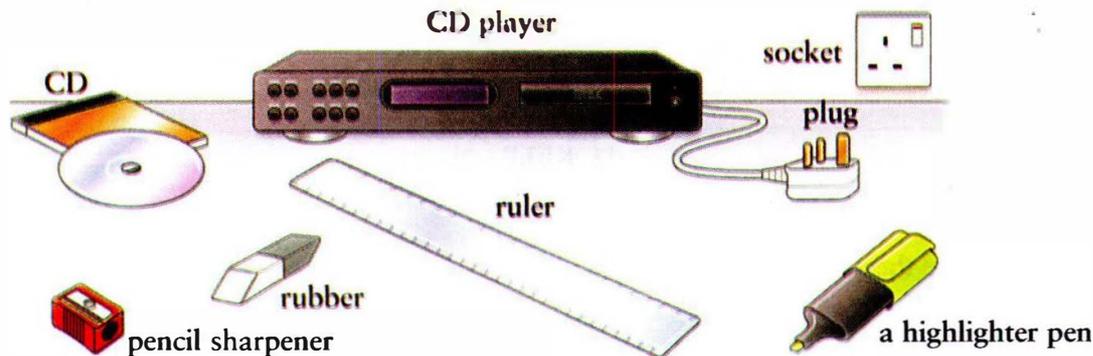
.....

31.5

## Over to you

Look for other notices (in English or your first language). Can you understand the English notices? Can you translate the ones in your own language? Try to find four more notices in the next week.

## A Equipment and uses



You use a rubber to **rub something out**, e.g. writing.  
You use a ruler to measure something.

You use a pencil sharpener to sharpen pencils.  
You use a highlighter pen to highlight a word.

## B Classroom activities

Teachers or students do these things in the classroom.

**look up** a word in a dictionary [find the meaning of a word]

**borrow** someone's dictionary or rubber [use it and then return it]

**plug in** the CD player [put the **plug** in the electric socket]

**turn up** the volume on the CD player [increase the volume; make it louder; *opp* turn (it) down]

**correct** students' English [give the correct English if students make mistakes]

## Language help

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

If you **lend** someone something, you give it to them for a period of time; if you **borrow** something from someone, you get it from them.

*Could you lend me your pen?* means the same as *Could I borrow your pen?*

Teachers may ask students to do these things in the classroom.

I'd like you to work with a **partner**. [someone else, i.e. another student]

Henrique, could you **swap places** with Lorena? [change seats / sit in each other's seats]

Kim, could you **share** your book with Petra? [use it together at the same time]

Repeat this sentence after me. [say it again]

## C Questions about vocabulary

Q: What does *tiny* mean?

A: It means 'very small'.

Q: How do you pronounce *weight*?

A: It's pronounced /weɪt/, like *wait*.

Q: How do you spell *bicycle*?

A: B-I-C-Y-C-L-E.

Q: How do you use the word *wow*?

A: We use it to show that we think something is fantastic or surprising, e.g. **Wow**, look at that car.

Q: Could you explain the difference between *lend* and *give*?

A: If you lend something to someone, they have to give it back. If you give something to them, they can keep it.

## Language help

www.irLanguage.com

verb	noun	verb	noun
mean	<b>meaning</b>	spell	<b>spelling</b>
pronounce	<b>pronunciation</b>	explain	<b>explanation</b>
repeat	<b>repetition</b>	use	<b>use</b>

# Exercises

## 32.1 Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

- |           |                                     |   |                  |
|-----------|-------------------------------------|---|------------------|
| 1 explain | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | g | a places         |
| 2 look up | <input type="checkbox"/>            |   | b a mistake      |
| 3 sharpen | <input type="checkbox"/>            |   | c a word         |
| 4 swap    | <input type="checkbox"/>            |   | d with a partner |
| 5 plug in | <input type="checkbox"/>            |   | e a dictionary   |
| 6 work    | <input type="checkbox"/>            |   | f the CD player  |
| 7 borrow  | <input type="checkbox"/>            |   | g the meaning    |
| 8 correct | <input type="checkbox"/>            |   | h a pencil       |

## 32.2 Answer the questions.

- |   |       |
|---|-------|
| 1 What do you put in a CD player?         | a CD  |
| 2 What do you use a dictionary for?       | ..... |
| 3 What do you put in a socket?            | ..... |
| 4 What do you use a rubber for?           | ..... |
| 5 Why do you share a book?                | ..... |
| 6 What do you use a highlighter pen for?  | ..... |
| 7 What do you use a pencil sharpener for? | ..... |
| 8 What do you use a ruler for?            | ..... |

## 32.3 Here are some answers about *swap*. Write the questions.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1 A: <u>What does 'swap' mean?</u>   |  |
| B: It means to change something for something else.                                      |  |
| 2 A: .....   |  |
| B: Like shop or stop.  |  |
| 3 A: .....   |  |
| B: S-W-A-P.  |  |
| 4 A: .....   |  |
| B: You could say: <i>I can't see the board from here. Could you swap places with me?</i> |  |

## 32.4 Read the sentences on the left, then write a suitable request on the right.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 You want to look up a word.   | Could I <u>borrow your dictionary?</u> |
| 2 You can't hear the CD player.   | Could you .....                        |
| 3 You need to borrow a dictionary.  | Could you .....                        |
| 4 You didn't hear what the teacher said.                                  | Could you .....                        |
| 5 You want to know the difference between <i>lend</i> and <i>borrow</i> . | Could you .....                        |
| 6 You need to use someone's ruler.  | Could I .....                          |
| 7 You want to sit in someone else's seat.                                 | Could we .....                         |

## 32.5

### Over to you

Think about your last lesson (in English or any other subject). Did you do any of these things:

- |                          |                           |                        |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|------------------------|
| use a highlighter pen?   | share a book with anyone? | use a rubber?          |
| look up any words?       | borrow anything?          | lend someone a pencil? |
| swap places with anyone? | use a ruler?              |                        |

# 33 School education

## A The school system

This is the system for state education in most parts of England and Wales. State schools are free and operated by the country. Parents pay to send their children to private schools.

age	education
3	Almost all children attend [go to; <i>fml</i> ] nursery school for up to 15 hours a week.
5	Everyone starts primary school.
11	Pupils [students at school] go to secondary school.
16	Pupils take/do GCSE exams, in up to ten subjects. Then they can leave school and get a job, or go to a college for vocational [job] training, e.g. hotel management or travel and tourism courses, or they can stay at school for two more years.
18	Pupils take 'A' level exams in three or four subjects, and then they can leave school and get a job or go on to university [continue their education at university], or go to a college for further education/training, e.g. teaching or business studies.

## B The school timetable

The school day is divided into about 5–7 lessons, and over the course of a week, most pupils do/study about ten subjects, including English, maths, history, science, etc. There's usually a one-hour lunch break [period of rest between work], and a break in the morning and afternoon as well.

### Language help

In American English the subject is **math**, but in British English it is **maths**.

The school year is usually divided into three terms [periods of study], with each term being about 13 weeks, although some schools are now having shorter terms and more frequent holidays. At the end of the school year, pupils usually take/do exams before they break up [end classes for the term]. After the summer holidays, they go back [return] for the new school year.

## C School rules\*

“In the past schools generally had more rules, and if you broke the rules<sup>1</sup>, you were punished. At my school, for example, pupils sometimes had to stay behind<sup>2</sup> and write an essay. I used to get into trouble<sup>3</sup> for wearing lipstick.

I remember we had to call the male teachers 'sir' and female teachers 'miss', and we had to wear a horrible uniform<sup>4</sup>. Nowadays, the atmosphere<sup>5</sup> is more relaxed<sup>6</sup>: older pupils can often dress<sup>7</sup> the way they want – as long as they're reasonably smart<sup>8</sup> – and the teachers are not as strict<sup>9</sup>.”

\* instructions telling you what you must or must not do

<sup>1</sup> did something wrong

<sup>2</sup> stay in a place when others leave

<sup>3</sup> do something wrong and be punished

<sup>4</sup> special clothes

<sup>5</sup> the feeling in a place or situation

<sup>6</sup> comfortable and informal

<sup>7</sup> wear clothes

<sup>8</sup> well dressed and not too casual

<sup>9</sup> A strict teacher punishes pupils who do something wrong.



lipstick

# Exercises

## 33.1 Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

- |         |                          |   |                |
|---------|--------------------------|---|----------------|
| 1 go    | <input type="checkbox"/> | e | a the rules    |
| 2 leave | <input type="checkbox"/> |   | b a uniform    |
| 3 take  | <input type="checkbox"/> |   | c into trouble |
| 4 wear  | <input type="checkbox"/> |   | d at school    |
| 5 study | <input type="checkbox"/> |   | e to school    |
| 6 stay  | <input type="checkbox"/> |   | f school       |
| 7 get   | <input type="checkbox"/> |   | g an exam      |
| 8 break | <input type="checkbox"/> |   | h a subject    |

## 33.2 Complete the sentences about state schools in England.

- When they're three, children can go to nursery..... school.
- At the age of five they go to ..... school.
- At the age of eleven they go to ..... school.
- When they're sixteen they ..... exams, and afterwards they can ..... school if they want.
- Many pupils ..... at school for another two years and do 'A' levels.
- Nowadays, a lot of pupils ..... to university after they leave school.

## 33.3 Choose the correct word to complete the sentences. Sometimes both are correct.

- We *take / do* exams in the summer. *Both* are correct.
- The school *timetable / schedule* is more or less the same every day.
- The day is divided *into / out of* seven lessons.
- The pupils *do / study* about ten subjects.
- There is usually a *rest / break* three times a day.
- Schools often *break out / break up* after they finish exams.
- After pupils leave school, many of them *take / get* a job.
- Pupils can *wear / dress* the way they want.

## 33.4 Complete the sentences.

- There were three terms..... in the school year.
- I had to ..... a uniform.
- I had to call the ..... teachers 'sir' and ..... teachers 'miss'.
- I occasionally got into ..... at school for doing things I shouldn't do.
- The teachers at my school were strict, and they ..... pupils who broke the rules.
- My school had a really nice, relaxed .....

## 33.5

### Over to you مرجع زبان ایرانیان

Answer the questions about the education system in your country. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

- Do you have state schools and private schools?
- Do all children have nursery education?
- When do children go to primary school and secondary school?
- Do all schools have the same terms?
- When can children leave school?
- Do pupils normally have to wear a uniform, or can they wear what they want?
- Are teachers usually quite strict?
- Is the atmosphere quite relaxed in most schools?

## A How are they getting on?\*

This is what Katya, an English teacher, thinks about some of her students.

“Ayumi has a wide **vocabulary** [knows a lot of words] and speaks very accurately [without mistakes], but she needs to practise her speaking more in order to become more **fluent** [able to speak naturally without stopping].”

“Cesar is quite fluent, but his **accent** [the way he pronounces words] is not very good. In particular, he has problems with certain **consonants**. [letters of the **alphabet** (a-z), which are not the vowels a, e, i, o, u]”

“Emre has no problem making himself **understood** [saying things in a way people understand], but he needs to **increase** his vocabulary [make it bigger], because at the moment it's quite **basic** [elementary; *syn* simple].”

“Olga is always **willing** to [happy and ready to] **experiment** with language [try something new to see what it is like]. For that reason she sometimes gets **things wrong** [makes mistakes], but she learns from her mistakes and she's making a lot of progress.”

“Andreas is a fantastic language learner. He picks things **up** [learns things without trying] very quickly, and he has a **good ear for language** [is good at hearing, repeating and understanding sounds and words].”

\*What progress are they making?



Katya

## Common mistakes

We use adjectives with nouns, and adverbs with verbs.

He's a **fluent** speaker. (NOT He's a ~~fluently~~ speaker.) She speaks **accurately**. (NOT She speaks ~~accurate~~.)

I need to speak English **well**. (NOT I need to speak English ~~good~~.)

## B Examinations

## Language help

You can **take** or **do** an exam (NOT ~~make~~ an exam). If you are successful and do well, you **pass**; if you are not successful and do badly, you **fail**. Before taking an exam, you **revise** for the exam [study / prepare for the exam]. Sometimes you can also **retake** an exam [do it again].

“My students are taking the Cambridge First Certificate exam in June, and for some of them it will be hard work<sup>1</sup>. I think Cesar might fail, but he's doing his **best**<sup>2</sup>, so with a bit of luck he might pass. I expect most of the others to pass. Andreas is a strong **candidate**<sup>3</sup>, and I'm sure he'll get a good **grade** (*syn* mark). I think Ayumi and Olga will also do well.

At the moment I'm trying to get **through**<sup>4</sup> the coursebook so that we can do some **revision**<sup>5</sup>. I think the most important thing is to do some **exam preparation**<sup>6</sup>. Today I want the students to **do/write an essay**<sup>7</sup>. Most of them still find it difficult to write accurately, so I need to **work on** that with them.”

<sup>1</sup> work that requires a lot of effort

<sup>2</sup> making as much effort as he can; *syn* trying his best

<sup>3</sup> someone who is taking an exam

<sup>4</sup> finish

<sup>5</sup> revise for the exam

<sup>6</sup> getting ready for the exam

<sup>7</sup> a short piece of writing about a particular subject

# Exercises

**34.1** Choose the correct word to complete the sentences. Sometimes both are correct.

- 1 We *made* / *got* something wrong in the first question.
- 2 I had to *do* / *write* an essay.
- 3 My sister picks *up* / *out* languages very quickly.
- 4 I will have to *revise for* / *revise* my exam next week.
- 5 The students always *do* / *make* their best.
- 6 Tomas wants to *do* / *take* the exam in June.
- 7 Karin *failed* / *lost* the exam, but she can retake it next year.

**34.2** Complete the sentences. The first letter has been given to help you.

- 1 There are twenty-six letters in the a**l**phabet.....
- 2 A+ is the highest g..... you can get.
- 3 There are over 100 c..... taking the exam.
- 4 We had to write an e..... for homework in not more than 200 words.
- 5 I need to w..... on my grammar; it's not very good.
- 6 I need to i..... my vocabulary; it's still very b.....
- 7 A and E are v.....; B, C and D are c.....
- 8 Studying for my exam is h..... w....., but it will be worth the effort.
- 9 Our teacher was always w..... to help us with our exam preparation.

**34.3** Rewrite the sentences on the left starting with the words given. Keep a similar meaning.

- |  |                                    |
|--|------------------------------------|
| 1 Can you retake the exam?                   | Can you do <u>the exam again</u> ? |
| 2 They will need to revise for the exam.     | They will need to do some .....    |
| 3 I will work as hard as I can.              | I will do .....                    |
| 4 We need to prepare for the exam.           | We need to do some .....           |
| 5 I make mistakes.                           | I get .....                        |
| 6 I can listen and repeat things accurately. | I have a good .....                |

**34.4** Complete the dialogues.

- 1 A: Do you think Hiroko will do well?  
B: Yes, I'm sure she'll pass..... the exam.
- 2 A: Is her pronunciation good?  
B: No, she has quite a strong .....
- 3 A: Can she speak naturally without stopping?  
B: Yes, she's quite .....
- 4 A: And does she make many mistakes?  
B: No, she's quite ..... when she speaks.
- 5 A: Does he know a lot of English?  
B: No, but he can make himself .....
- 6 A: Will you finish the book?  
B: Yeah, we should get ..... it.
- 7 A: Did Amy do ..... in her exam?  
B: Yes, she got 80%.

**34.5**

## Over to you

Answer the questions. If possible, ask someone else the same questions.

Do you think you ...

... can make yourself understood?

... have a strong accent?

... are quite accurate?

... are quite fluent?

... have a wide vocabulary?

... have a good ear for language?

... pick things up quickly?

... often experiment with new language?

## A Subjects

You can **do/study** these subjects at university but not always at school.

**medicine** (to become a doctor)

**engineering** (to become an engineer)

**economics** (to become an economist)

**business studies** (to become a **businessman/woman** and go into business)

**law** (to become a lawyer)

**architecture** (to become an architect)

**psychology** (to become a psychologist)

www.irLanguage.com

## B Studying at university

Some students go to university because they enjoy studying, others just want a **qualification**<sup>1</sup>. First, however, you have to get good grades in your final school exams to get a place at many universities. You can then **study for / do a degree**<sup>2</sup>. If you complete the course **successfully**, you get your **degree**<sup>3</sup> and receive a **certificate**<sup>4</sup>. In the UK, most degree courses **last**<sup>5</sup> three years, although some take longer, e.g. medicine or law.

Teachers at university are usually called **lecturers**, and most of the teaching is done through **lectures**<sup>6</sup>. The most senior lecturers have the title **Professor**. Students doing arts subjects, e.g. English or history, will spend time working in the **library** and writing **essays**<sup>7</sup>. Students doing science degrees, e.g. physics or chemistry, will probably spend a lot of their time working in a **laboratory** (*infrm* lab).



library



laboratory (lab)

<sup>1</sup> something that you get when you are successful in an exam

<sup>2</sup> do a course at university

<sup>3</sup> (also the word for) a university qualification

<sup>4</sup> a document that shows you have completed a course successfully

<sup>5</sup> continue for

<sup>6</sup> the lecturer talks and the students listen

<sup>7</sup> short pieces of writing on a particular subject

### Language help

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

noun	verb	adjective
qualification	<b>qualify</b>	<b>qualified</b>
<b>success</b>	<b>succeed (in sth / in doing sth)</b>	<b>(un)successful</b>

## C Postgraduate degrees

When students are doing their first degree, they are called **undergraduates**. When they complete their degree, they are **graduates**. Some graduates **go on to do** [do something in the future] a **Master's**, e.g. in the UK an MA (Master of Arts) or MSc (Master of Science). These are called **postgraduate degrees**. The longest one is a **PhD** (Doctor of Philosophy) where students do **research** [make a detailed study of one particular subject] for at least three years.

# Exercises

## 35.1 Complete the sentences.

- 1 To become a psychologist you need to study psychology.
- 2 To become an engineer you need to study .....
- 3 To become a doctor you need to study .....
- 4 To become an economist you need to study .....
- 5 To become a lawyer you need to study .....
- 6 To become an architect you need to study .....

## 35.2 Put the sentences in the correct order.

- |                                     |                          |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| I did a degree course.              | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| I passed with good grades.          | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| I got a Master's.                   | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| I did a postgraduate course.        | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| I did my final exams at school.     | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| I became an undergraduate.          | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| I got a place at university.        | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| I got a degree in business studies. | <input type="checkbox"/> |

## 35.3 Are the sentences about English universities true or false? If a sentence is false, correct it.

- 1 The teachers are all called professors. False. Most teachers are called lecturers.
- 2 Anyone can go to university if they want to. ....
- 3 Some students go to university just to get a qualification. ....
- 4 Most university degree courses in the UK last two years. ....
- 5 Students go to lectures at university. ....
- 6 If you are unsuccessful, you get a degree. ....
- 7 Students studying for their first degree are called graduates. ....
- 8 Science students have to write a lot of essays. ....
- 9 A PhD is a postgraduate degree. ....
- 10 If you study arts subjects, you work in a laboratory. ....

## 35.4 Complete the text.

Stephen got very good <sup>1</sup> grades in his final school exams, and he went to university and got a <sup>2</sup> ..... in economics. He then <sup>3</sup> ..... to do an MSc. The course <sup>4</sup> ..... a year, and at the end of it, he had an offer to go <sup>5</sup> ..... business with a friend. After two years though, he decided to go back to university to do <sup>6</sup> ..... for a PhD. He knows it will be three years' work without much money, but he loves studying, and never went to university just for a <sup>7</sup> ..... that would get him a good job earning a lot of money.

## 35.5

### Over to you

Answer the questions. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

- 1 Do you need to pass exams before you can go to university in your country?
- 2 How long do most degree courses last?
- 3 In England the first degree is called a BA or BSc. What are they called in your country?
- 4 Do you have similar postgraduate degrees in your country?
- 5 Do you get a certificate when you finish your degree?

# 36 Jobs

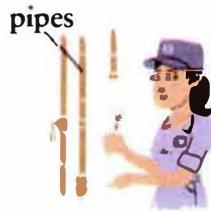
## A Working with your hands



**builder**  
[builds or repairs homes]



**carpenter**  
[makes things using wood]



**plumber**  
[installs and repairs water pipes, etc.]



**electrician**  
[installs and repairs electrical things, e.g. lights]



**mechanic**  
[repairs cars when there is a problem]

### Language help

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

When something is damaged or broken, we often use **repair** or **fix**.

*Dad **repaired/fix**ed the window for me.*

*I need someone to **fix/repair** the computer.*

With small pieces of equipment we can also use **mend**; with clothes we often use **mend**.

*Could you **fix/repair/mend** my watch?*

*I've **mended** your trousers for you.*

## B Professions\*

job	what he/she does	www.irLanguage.com
architect	designs buildings	
lawyer	represents people with legal problems	
engineer	plans the building of roads, bridges, machines, etc.	
accountant	controls the financial situation of people and companies	
university lecturer	teaches in a university, e.g. gives lectures	

\* jobs that need a lot of training and/or education

## C The medical profession

These people **treat** people or animals. [give medicine or medical help]

GPs [general practitioners: doctors who don't work in a hospital], dentists [people who look after your teeth] and vets [animal doctors] all work in a place called a **surgey**. In hospital there are nurses who look after people, and **surgeons** who **operate** on people [open the body to remove or repair a part that is damaged].

## D The armed forces and the emergency services

My son joined the army when he was 18. [became a member of]



gun

**soldier**  
(in the army)

**sailor**  
(in the navy)

**pilot**  
(in the air force)

**police officer**  
(in the police force)

**fireman/  
firefighter**  
(in the fire brigade)

# Exercises

**36.1** Match the job on the left with something the person uses on the right.

- |              |                                     |           |
|--------------|-------------------------------------|-----------|
| 1 lecturer   | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | a a gun   |
| 2 plumber    | <input type="checkbox"/>            | b wood    |
| 3 accountant | <input type="checkbox"/>            | c books   |
| 4 builder    | <input type="checkbox"/>            | d pipes   |
| 5 soldier    | <input type="checkbox"/>            | e bricks  |
| 6 carpenter  | <input type="checkbox"/>            | f numbers |

**36.2** Write down *one* job from the opposite page that would be difficult for the person in 1–6, and *three* jobs that would be difficult for the person in 7–9.

- |  |                      |
|--|----------------------|
| 1 Someone who didn't go to university.                     | <u>dentist</u> ..... |
| 2 Someone who is always sick on a boat.                    | .....                |
| 3 Someone who is not interested in cars.                   | .....                |
| 4 Someone who is afraid of dogs.                           | .....                |
| 5 Someone who is afraid of heights and high places.        | .....                |
| 6 Someone who is terrible at numbers and maths.            | .....                |
| 7 Someone who isn't good at working with their hands.      | .....                |
| 8 Someone who cannot see very well.                        | .....                |
| 9 Someone who will not work in the evening or at weekends. | .....                |

**36.3** Test your knowledge. Can you write down what these people do without looking at the opposite page?

- |                         |  |
|-------------------------|--|
| 1 A university lecturer | <u>teaches university students</u> ..... |
| 2 A vet                 | .....                                    |
| 3 An architect          | .....                                    |
| 4 An electrician        | .....                                    |
| 5 A lawyer              | .....                                    |
| 6 A surgeon             | .....                                    |
| 7 A mechanic            | .....                                    |
| 8 A dentist             | .....                                    |
| 9 An engineer           | .....                                    |

**36.4** Complete the dialogues.

- |   |       |
|---|-------|
| 1 A: She's a police officer.                          |       |
| B: <u>Really? When did she join the police force?</u> | ..... |
| 2 A: He's a sailor.                                   |       |
| B: .....  | ..... |
| 3 A: He's a fighter pilot.                            |       |
| B: .....  | ..... |
| 4 A: She's a soldier.                                 |       |
| B: .....  | ..... |
| 5 A: He's a firefighter.                              |       |
| B: .....  | ..... |

**36.5**

## Over to you

Write a list of friends, relatives or neighbours who have jobs. What does each person do?

# 37 Talking about your work

## A What do you do?

People can ask what job you do in different ways; you can answer in different ways.

A: What do you do?

A: What's your job?

A: What do you do for a living?

B: I'm a doctor/  
hairdresser, etc.

B: I work in sales /  
marketing / a bank, etc.

B: I work for Union Bank /  
Fiat / Sony, etc.

## B What does that involve?\*

James and Emma are business consultants [people who help others in a particular area]. Their work involves advising people who want to set up [start] a business, especially in health and fitness. James deals with the marketing [does the work in marketing; *syn* handle], while Emma is responsible for [in control of; *syn* in charge of] products [things that people make/produce] such as towels, equipment, beauty products, etc.

### Common mistakes

I have a lot of work to do. (NOT I have a lot of ~~works~~ to do.)

She **advises** me. (NOT She ~~advices~~ me.) BUT She gives me **advice**. (NOT She gives me ~~advise~~.)

My job involves a lot of travel. OR My job involves travelling. (NOT My job involves ~~to travel~~.)

Amy is a manager in a veterinary surgery. She **runs** [organises or controls] the day-to-day [happening every day] business of the surgery and is in charge of a small team: three receptionists, an accounts manager and a secretary. Her work involves a lot of **admin** [short for administration] such as buying food, medicine and equipment; she also handles any complaints that customers make [when customers **complain** / say that something is wrong or is not satisfactory].

\* What do you have to do exactly?

## C Pay

Most workers are paid [receive money] every month; this is called a salary. Your income is the total amount of money you receive in a year. This might be money from one job; it might be money from two jobs. We can express this in different ways:

My income is about £25,000. OR I **earn/make** about £25,000 a year [every year].

Some of that income you can keep, but some goes to the government; in the UK this is called income tax, e.g. *I lose 20% of my income in income tax.*

### Language help

A **salary** is money paid to professional people, e.g. doctors or teachers, and to office workers for the work they do, and is usually paid into a person's bank account every month. **Wages** are usually paid for each hour/day/week of work to people who do more physical jobs, e.g. building or cleaning.

## D Conditions\*

Most people work **fixed** hours [always the same], e.g. 9 am to 5.30 pm. We often call this a **nine-to-five** job. Other people have to **do/work overtime** [work extra hours]. Some people get paid for overtime; others don't. Some people have good working conditions, e.g. nice offices, paid holidays, extra time off [not at work] for a new mother and father when a baby is born, etc. There is also a **minimum** wage [an amount of money workers receive, and employers cannot pay less than this].

\* the situation in which people work or live

# Exercises

**37.1** Tick (✓) the words which are directly connected with *money*.

pay ✓	earn	handle	wages
salary	income	consult	product

**37.2** Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

1 set up	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	a clients
2 in charge	<input type="checkbox"/>	b a company
3 deal	<input type="checkbox"/>	c overtime
4 earn	<input type="checkbox"/>	d with complaints
5 do	<input type="checkbox"/>	e of a small department
6 advise	<input type="checkbox"/>	f money

**37.3** Rewrite the sentences on the left starting with the words given. Keep a similar meaning.

1 What do you do?	What's <u>your job</u> ?
2 I'm a marketing assistant.	I work .....
3 I'm employed by the government.	I work .....
4 I earn £22,000 a year from my two jobs.	My .....
5 What do you have to do exactly?	What does your job .....
6 I'm responsible for the reception area.	I'm in .....
7 What's your job?	What do you do for .....
8 I have to read government reports.	My job involves .....
9 I advise clients.	I give .....
10 I complained about the service.	I made .....

**37.4** Complete the texts. Put one word in each gap.

Alexander Carpenter works <sup>1</sup> *in* ..... sales, and he's a regional manager. He <sup>2</sup> ..... the north-west region and he's <sup>3</sup> ..... for a small team of five other sales people. His job <sup>4</sup> ..... a lot of travelling within the region, and he's in contact with his team on a day-to- <sup>5</sup> ..... basis. It's not a nine-to- <sup>6</sup> ..... job: Alexander has to do a lot of <sup>7</sup> ..... . Fortunately he can <sup>8</sup> ..... a lot more money by doing this, and his working <sup>9</sup> ..... are quite good. After income <sup>10</sup> ..... he makes £60,000 <sup>11</sup> ..... year. Recently his wife had a baby, but the company gave him extra time <sup>12</sup> ..... to be with her after the birth.

Kelly Bradbury is a financial adviser for a bank. She specialises in mortgages, which means that she <sup>13</sup> ..... people who want to buy a flat or a house. At the moment Kelly spends a lot of her time <sup>14</sup> ..... with young people who are trying to buy a property for the first time, which is not easy. She works <sup>15</sup> ..... hours – 9 am to 5 pm – and she doesn't have to <sup>16</sup> ..... overtime.

**37.5**

## Over to you

Answer the questions about working conditions in your country. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

- 1 What are normal working hours for most office jobs in your country?
- 2 How much income tax do most people pay? (e.g. 10% or 20% of what they earn)
- 3 Do male and female workers normally get time off if they have a baby? If so, how much?
- 4 Is there a minimum wage? If so, do you know what it is?

## A Getting a job\*

“When I left school, I applied for<sup>1</sup> jobs in different companies, and finally, after sending out lots of CVs<sup>2</sup> and having some interviews<sup>3</sup>, a small company employed me<sup>4</sup>. I didn't earn a lot, but the company gave me some training<sup>5</sup>, which was good.”

\* finding a job

<sup>1</sup> wrote a letter of application for

<sup>2</sup> a document which describes your education and the jobs you have done

<sup>3</sup> a meeting where someone asks you questions to see if you are suitable for a job

<sup>4</sup> gave me a job

<sup>5</sup> help and advice to learn how to do a job or activity

## Common mistakes

I had some training. (NOT I had ~~a~~ training.) You can also go on / do a training course [a period of organised help and advice, often in a different place] (NOT formation or stage).

## B Promotion

“I worked hard and soon I was promoted [given a better job with more responsibility]. They also gave me a good pay rise [more money]. It was really good experience [knowledge you get from doing something such as a job], and when my boss left the company a few years later, they gave me an important promotion [a move to a higher job in the company].”

## C Resignation\*

“By my mid-twenties, I was getting a bit bored, and decided I wanted to work abroad [in another country]. So, I quit my job [told the company I was leaving; *syn* resign] and started looking for jobs in the UK. After a couple of months I got a job in London. At first I liked it, but ...”

\* when you say officially you are leaving a job

## D Unemployment\*

“After six months, I got fed up with the job – and I think I was enjoying myself too much to work very hard. Finally, the company sacked me [told me to leave the company; *syn* gave me the sack], and after that I was unemployed [without a job; *syn* out of work] for two months. Finally I got a part-time job [working only part of the day or week; *opp* full-time job] in the kitchen of a restaurant.”

\* when people do not have a job

## Common mistakes

Claudio didn't have a job. (NOT He didn't have ~~a~~ work.)

## E Success and retirement\*



Claudio

“I loved the restaurant. I learned how to cook, and two years later I became manager. Three years after that I opened my own restaurant [belonging to me / it was my restaurant]. It was very successful [it did well and made money], and twenty years later, I owned five restaurants, and I was the owner of two hotels. I believe anyone can succeed [be successful] if they work hard enough – and have a little bit of luck. Last year, aged fifty, I retired and went back to Italy.”

\* the time when people stop work, often at 60 or 65

# Exercises

## 38.1 Match the answers on the right with the questions on the left.

- |                                 |                                     |   |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------|---|
| 1 Why did they sack him?        | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | a Because he was 65.                                |
| 2 Why did they promote him?     | <input type="checkbox"/>            | b Because he needed more training.                  |
| 3 Why did he apply for the job? | <input type="checkbox"/>            | c Because he was late for work every day.           |
| 4 Why did he retire?            | <input type="checkbox"/>            | d Because he was out of work.                       |
| 5 Why did he quit his job?      | <input type="checkbox"/>            | e Because he was the best person in the department. |
| 6 Why did he go on the course?  | <input type="checkbox"/>            | f Because he didn't like his boss.                  |

## 38.2 Complete the table.

verb	noun	adjective
employ	(un)employment	
promote		
retire		
resign		
	success	
own		

## 38.3 Complete the sentences.

- Lucy is hoping to *get* ..... a job in a travel agency when she leaves school.
- I decided to work ..... to see what life was like in another country.
- I don't want a full-time job. I'd prefer to work .....
- She ..... her job when her boss refused to give her a pay .....
- I didn't earn much money in the job, but it was still good ..... because the company sent me on several training .....
- After they sacked me, I was out of ..... for six months.
- It's not easy to ..... in business; you need ability and luck.
- I think you should definitely ..... for that job.
- Brett was terrible as a tour guide; that's why they gave him the .....
- I've worked for other people most of my life, but I'd really like to run my ..... company.
- I used to ..... a company but it wasn't a ..... ; I lost a lot of money.
- If she's interested in that job, she'll have to write a letter of .....

## 38.4

### Over to you

If you have a job, answer the questions. If possible, ask someone else the same questions.

- Have you been promoted since you started working at your present company?
- Do you normally get a good pay rise at the end of each year?
- Have you been on many training courses since you started work?
- Would you like to go on more training courses in the future?
- Have you ever resigned from a job, or been given the sack?

# 39 Working in an office

## A Office equipment



## B Office work

Josh works for a company which produces<sup>1</sup> furniture. He doesn't work in the factory where the furniture is produced, but in the offices across the road.

His job involves<sup>2</sup> quite a lot of paperwork<sup>3</sup>. He types<sup>4</sup> letters to different companies, sends out invoices<sup>5</sup> to customers and sends emails.

He also has to arrange<sup>6</sup> visits to other companies, make appointments<sup>7</sup> for his boss, and sometimes he shows visitors round the factory. Occasionally he has to attend<sup>8</sup> meetings with his boss, but one of Josh's most important tasks is to organise<sup>9</sup> the office party every year.

<sup>1</sup> makes

<sup>2</sup> includes doing

<sup>3</sup> work that uses paper, e.g. reports, forms

<sup>4</sup> writes using a keyboard

<sup>5</sup> documents showing how much the customer has to pay

<sup>6</sup> plan and prepare

<sup>7</sup> arrange a time when you meet someone

<sup>8</sup> go to; *fml*

<sup>9</sup> plan and arrange

### Language help

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

verb	noun	verb	noun
arrange	<b>arrangement</b>	attend	<b>attendance</b>
organise	<b>organisation</b>	produce	<b>production</b>

## C Office problems

Josh is having a bad day today. The photocopier has broken down<sup>1</sup>, the computer isn't working and the printer has run out of<sup>2</sup> paper. On top of that, two of his colleagues<sup>3</sup> are absent<sup>4</sup>, just when there is loads of<sup>5</sup> work to do.

<sup>1</sup> stopped working

<sup>2</sup> has no more

<sup>3</sup> people you work with

<sup>4</sup> not in the office; *syn off*

<sup>5</sup> lots of; *infml*

# Exercises

## 39.1 Finish the noun in each sentence.

- I've just got myself a new *key board*.....
- I threw all that stuff in the *rubbish* .....
- He put most of the stuff in the *filig* .....
- It's a very boring job and I spend most of my time doing general *paper*.....
- I told him to put the details on the *notice*.....

## 39.2 Which words are being defined?

- The place where you throw away paper you don't want. *bin*.....
- People you work with. ....
- Something you put on a wall which tells you the date. ....
- A book where you write down appointments and things you have to do. ....
- A piece of paper which shows a customer what they have bought and what they must pay. ....
- An electronic device that helps you to add up numbers and do maths. ....
- An informal word meaning 'lots'. ....

## 39.3 Complete the dialogues.

- A: What does the company do?  
 B: It *produces*..... electronic equipment.
- A: I've ..... to see the bank manager on Friday, but I think I'm going to be away.  
 B: OK. Do you want me to make another ..... for you?  
 A: Yes, please. That would be great. Next Thursday or Friday, if possible.
- A: Why can't we use the printer?  
 B: It's ..... of ink.
- A: Do you have to ..... meetings?  
 B: Yes, sometimes, if my boss is away and he can't go.
- A: We've got some visitors coming tomorrow.  
 B: Right. Would you like me to ..... them ..... the factory?
- A: What does your work ..... ?  
 B: Basically, I have to ..... people's travel arrangements and hotel accommodation.

## 39.4 Rewrite the sentences using the words in capitals. Keep a similar meaning.

- |  |                                   |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| 1 My boss isn't here today. OFF          | My boss <i>is off today</i> ..... |
| 2 The photocopier is broken. WORK        | The photocopier .....             |
| 3 We're very busy today. LOADS           | We .....                          |
| 4 I have to go to a meeting. ATTEND      | I have to .....                   |
| 5 We don't have any more paper. RUN OUT  | We .....                          |
| 6 Why isn't he here this morning? ABSENT | Why .....                         |

## 39.5

### Over to you

[www.irLanguage.com](http://www.irLanguage.com)

Have you got a job? If so, are these statements true for you? If you haven't got a job, answer for someone you know.

I do lots of paperwork.  
 I organise events.  
 I use a photocopier.

I attend meetings.  
 I type letters.  
 I send invoices.

I send loads of emails.  
 I show people round.  
 I repair things that break down.

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

## A

## A successful business

This is the story of a company that has **achieved a great deal** [a lot] in a short period of time.

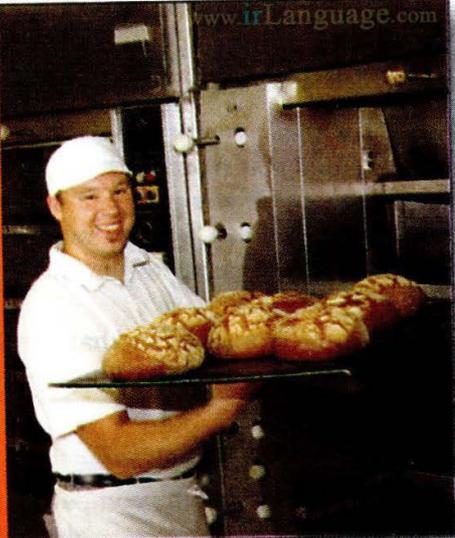
## Language help

If you **achieve** something, you have been successful in something that needed a lot of work and effort. The noun is **achievement**, e.g. *Writing a book has been my greatest achievement.*

## DENHAM FARM BAKERY

**DENHAM FARM BAKERY**<sup>1</sup> is a family business, with three different **generations** (father, son and granddaughter) of the family **currently**<sup>2</sup> working with a team of 90 **employees**. The company **was set up**<sup>3</sup> in 1991 with the **aim**<sup>4</sup> of producing a **variety**<sup>5</sup> of bread of the highest **quality**<sup>6</sup>. The Denham family saw there was a **growing demand**<sup>7</sup> for organic products in the 1990s, and they soon became **experts**<sup>8</sup> in the field of organic bread-making. The company is **run**<sup>9</sup> from a factory in Ilminster, where the bread is baked **daily**<sup>10</sup> and then **delivered**<sup>11</sup> to shops across the south-west of England. The **firm**<sup>12</sup> has **expanded**<sup>13</sup> a great deal in the last 20 years, but it still remains a family business.





<sup>1</sup> place where bread and cakes are made or sold

<sup>2</sup> now, at the moment (NOT **actually**)

<sup>3</sup> started (used about a company or organisation)

<sup>4</sup> a plan of what you hope to achieve

<sup>5</sup> different types

<sup>6</sup> how good or bad something is

<sup>7</sup> when more people want to buy something

<sup>8</sup> people with skill/knowledge in something

<sup>9</sup> organised and controlled

<sup>10</sup> every day

<sup>11</sup> taken (to shops)

<sup>12</sup> company or business

<sup>13</sup> become bigger

## B

## A view of a company

Morgan & Stenson are a firm of **accountants**<sup>1</sup>. They were **formerly**<sup>2</sup> Stenson & Son, but were **taken over**<sup>3</sup> by JS Morgan five years ago. James Morgan **took up** the **position**<sup>4</sup> of senior partner, and the company changed its name to Morgan & Stenson. The **headquarters**<sup>5</sup> of the firm are in Newcastle, but they have five other **branches**<sup>6</sup> in different parts of the north-east of England.

James Morgan is a **former** owner of a football club, with many **contacts**<sup>7</sup> in the football world, so many of his **clients**<sup>8</sup> are footballers.

Last year the company **attracted** a lot of **attention**<sup>9</sup> when it became the first firm of accountants to advertise on local TV and radio. At the time, James Morgan said it was his **ambition**<sup>10</sup> to change the **image**<sup>11</sup> that people have of accountants.

<sup>1</sup> people who control a person or company's money

<sup>2</sup> in the past but not now

<sup>3</sup> JS Morgan got control of Stenson & Son

<sup>4</sup> started in the job

<sup>5</sup> the place where the main office is

<sup>6</sup> offices that are part of the company

<sup>7</sup> people you know

<sup>8</sup> people who pay someone for a service

<sup>9</sup> caused people to notice it

<sup>10</sup> something someone wants to achieve

<sup>11</sup> the way that people think of them

## Language help

We usually talk about an **ex-wife/boyfriend**, etc., but a **former** president/career/banker, etc. Shops and organisations have **customers**; lawyers, accountants, etc. have **clients**. We **take up** a job or activity, but we **set up** a company.

# Exercises

40.1 Tick (✓) the words which refer to people.

headquarters      employee ✓      branches      expert      bakery  
 accountant      quality      client      contacts      variety

40.2 Replace the underlined word(s) with a word or phrase that has a similar meaning.

- 1 The food is delivered every day. *daily*.....
- 2 There is a real need for food of this quality. ....
- 3 Our plan is to open another branch. ....
- 4 The company is doing well. ....
- 5 We have 25 workers. ....
- 6 I started the business ten years ago. ....
- 7 Their main offices are in Sheffield. ....
- 8 He's hoping for a position in the company. ....
- 9 The firm is getting bigger. ....
- 10 The company made a lot of money last year. ....

40.3 Choose the best word to complete the sentences.

- 1 They're experts (in) / *on* farming.
- 2 When did you *set up* / *take up* tennis?
- 3 Her law firm has many famous *clients* / *customers*.
- 4 She's actually my *ex-* / *former* wife; we got divorced last year.
- 5 When did they *set up* / *take up* the company?
- 6 The shop assistant was serving a *client* / *customer*.
- 7 Marcel used to work here, but he's *currently* / *actually* working abroad.
- 8 Are they planning to *take up* / *take over* the company?
- 9 George Bush is a *former* / *an ex-* president of America.

40.4 Rewrite the sentences using the words in capitals. Keep a similar meaning.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1 He makes different cakes. VARIETY            | He <i>makes a variety of</i> cakes. .... |
| 2 They were very successful. ACHIEVE           | They .....<br>.....                      |
| 3 I know a lot of people in banking. CONTACTS  | I .....<br>.....                         |
| 4 They used to be called BMG. FORMERLY         | They .....<br>.....                      |
| 5 I've always wanted to fly a plane. AMBITION  | It's .....<br>.....                      |
| 6 She has a great knowledge of finance. EXPERT | She .....<br>.....                       |
| 7 People noticed the adverts. ATTRACT          | The adverts .....<br>.....               |

40.5 Complete the text.

**D**anielle Spinks set up her motorbike courier service (DCS) in 1979. If you wanted to send documents across London, Danielle promised to <sup>1</sup> *deliver* ..... them in less than one hour. It was only a small <sup>2</sup> ....., but DCS <sup>3</sup> ..... immediate success, so Danielle set up another <sup>4</sup> ..... of the company in Manchester, which was <sup>5</sup> ..... by her brother, Darren. The business soon <sup>6</sup> ..... rapidly, and it is now Danielle's <sup>7</sup> ..... to have a branch of her courier service in every major city in England.

## A Rise and fall

These verbs describe trends [movements] in sales [how much you sell], prices, etc.

When sales or prices rise / go up / increase, they can do it in different ways:

They can rise **slightly**. [a bit] →

They can rise **gradually**. [slowly over a long period] →

They can rise **sharply**. [quickly and by a large amount] ↗

The opposite can also happen. Prices or sales can **fall / go down / decrease** slightly, gradually or sharply. If prices don't rise *or* fall, they **stay the same**. →

We use certain prepositions to say by how much something rises or falls.

The price has risen **by** 10 pence. Sales fell **from** 8,000 units **to** 6,500 units.

Rise/increase and fall/decrease can also be used as nouns, with certain prepositions.

There's been a **gradual** rise in prices. We've seen a **slight** increase in profit.

There's been a **sharp** fall in sales. Profits were £5 million, which is a **decrease** of 10%.

## Language help

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

**Profit** is the money you receive from your business after you have paid all your costs (*opp loss*).  
Last year the company **made a profit** of €2 million but this year they could **make a loss**.

## B Financial language

With the **economy**<sup>1</sup> now improving, banks are reporting positive **signs**<sup>2</sup> that the number of **loans**<sup>3</sup> is increasing.

With **inflation**<sup>4</sup> expected to rise, there are **growing fears**<sup>5</sup> that **interest rates**<sup>6</sup> could go up by as much as **2%**<sup>7</sup> next year.

**Figures**<sup>8</sup> published yesterday show that **trade**<sup>9</sup> between the two countries has now risen for the fifth year **in a row**<sup>10</sup>.

Although the **value**<sup>11</sup> of the pound fell slightly against the dollar yesterday, the news that sales rose in the last **quarter**<sup>12</sup> has **raised**<sup>13</sup> hopes that we may be coming out of **recession**<sup>14</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> the system by which a country's trade, industry and money are organised

<sup>2</sup> something which shows something is happening

<sup>3</sup> money that you borrow

<sup>4</sup> the rate at which prices increase

<sup>5</sup> increasing worries

<sup>6</sup> (see language help below)

<sup>7</sup> this is spoken as *two per cent*

<sup>8</sup> an amount shown in numbers, e.g. 500

<sup>9</sup> buying and selling between countries

<sup>10</sup> one after another with no break

<sup>11</sup> the money that something can be sold for

<sup>12</sup> (in business) a period of three months

<sup>13</sup> increased; you can also **raise prices**

<sup>14</sup> a time when the economy is not successful

## Language help

www.irLanguage.com

**Interest** is what the bank **charges** you [asks you to pay] when you borrow money from them, and the **interest rate** is how much you must pay as a **percentage**, e.g. **5%**, **8%**, etc. So, if you borrow £100 for a year and the interest rate is 15% a year, you'll have to **pay back** £115.

# Exercises

## 41.1 Choose the correct word to complete the sentences.

- We made a profit *of* for six million euros.
- Sales rose *to / by* 10% last year.
- The value of the shares fell *from / for* 240 pence to 225 pence.
- There was a fall *of / from* 5% in the value of the shares.
- There has been a gradual rise *with / in* profits.
- The company made a loss two years *on / in* a row.
- What's the current value *of / in* the euro?

## 41.2 Which words or phrases are being defined?

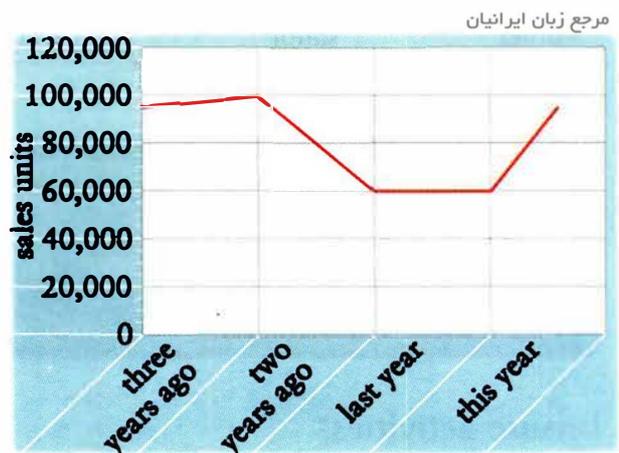
- The amount of money that something can be sold for. *value*
- Money you borrow from a bank for your business.
- What the bank charges you when you borrow money.
- The rate at which prices increase.
- The money that a company receives for its goods after paying all the costs.
- Buying and selling goods and services between countries.
- A movement in sales, prices, etc. over a period of time.

## 41.3 Complete the two short texts, then answer each of the two questions.

- If you get a bank ..... of €500 for one year and the bank ..... you 20% ....., how much will you have to ..... to the bank at the end of the year? .....
- If you take out a similar amount from another bank, and the interest ..... is 15 ....., how much will you ..... at the end of the year? .....

## 41.4 Look at the graph and complete the text.

The <sup>1</sup> graph ..... shows sales  
<sup>2</sup> ..... for the last three and a  
 half years. Three years ago sales  
<sup>3</sup> ..... slightly and reached  
 100,000 units by the end of the year.  
 The company <sup>4</sup> ..... a profit of  
 almost £500,000 and decided to  
<sup>5</sup> ..... the price from £8.95 to  
 £10.25. It had an immediate effect: there  
 was a <sup>6</sup> ..... <sup>7</sup> ..... in  
 sales over the year. It was bad news, and the  
 company made a <sup>8</sup> .....  
 And in the next year sales <sup>9</sup> ..... the same. However, in the first two <sup>10</sup>  
 ..... of this year, they have <sup>11</sup> ..... <sup>12</sup> ..... for the first  
 time in many years.



## 41.5

### Over to you

[www.irLanguage.com](http://www.irLanguage.com)

Can you answer these questions about your own country?

- What is the inflation rate at the moment?
- If you borrow money from the bank, what is the approximate interest rate you will be charged?
- Do you think the economy is doing well or badly?
- When was the last time your country was in recession?
- What is the value of your currency against the dollar?

## A Sports



sport	person	verb(s)	place
athletics	athlete	run, jump, throw, etc.	track (in a stadium)
motor racing	racing driver	drive/race	track
swimming	swimmer	swim/race	pool
boxing	boxer	box/fight	boxing ring
skiing	skier	ski	ski slopes
football	footballer	play	pitch (in a stadium)
ice hockey	ice hockey player	play	ice hockey rink
golf	golfer	play	golf course
basketball	basketball player	play	basketball court
sailing	sailor	sail	on the sea or a lake

## Language help

We play sports such as football, ice hockey, tennis, golf and basketball.

*I play football in the winter. I play basketball twice a week.*

We use go with other sports and activities, especially those ending in *-ing*.

*I go swimming in the lake during summer. We often go rock climbing in the mountains.*

We use do with a lot of / a bit of + *-ing*.

*I did a bit of sailing in the holidays. I don't do a lot of running these days.*

## B Leisure activities\*

tent



camping



rock climbing



jogging



yoga



going to the gym

We often go camping in the summer, and we usually do a bit of rock climbing as well.

My best friend does a lot of yoga. She works out in the gym two or three times a week as well.

My brother enjoys jogging, and it keeps him fit. [helps his body to stay in good condition]

My mum does a bit of jogging as well – just for fun. [because she enjoys it; *syn* for pleasure]

I'm afraid I don't do any exercise at all.

\* activities in your free time

# Exercises

## 42.1 Put the words into the correct columns.

swimming	golfer	court	track	jump	pitch	net
motor racing	stick	basketball	athlete	box	skis	race
goalkeeper	racing driver	sail	rink	skiing	swimming costume	

sport	person	place	verb	equipment
swimming				

## 42.2 Complete the sentences with the correct verb.

- We play ..... football in the winter at my school.
- Do you ..... much exercise?
- I ..... basketball in the summer and winter.
- We always ..... in the winter, as long as there is enough snow.
- I ..... a bit of yoga when I was younger.
- We used to ..... camping in the mountains.
- I ..... a lot of swimming in the summer.
- If you want to ..... fit, you need to run three or four miles every other day.
- I used to ..... in the gym, but I'm getting a bit old for that now.

## 42.3 What is the sport and who is the person?



1 skiing .....  
skier .....



2 .....  
.....



3 .....  
.....



4 .....  
.....



5 .....  
.....

## 42.4 Complete the last word in each sentence.

- Do you know the size of a boxing ring..... ?
- I used to play ice .....
- We played golf in Scotland, where they have some fantastic golf .....
- My dad plays golf. He's not a serious golfer; he just plays for .....
- If the girls go swimming, they must remember to take their swimming .....
- We watch a lot of motor .....
- I love swimming, and it helps to keep me .....
- My sister enjoys rock .....
- You can't go camping unless you have a .....
- Running is good exercise, so four or five times a week I go .....

## 42.5

### Over to you

Answer these questions. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

- What sport or leisure activities do you do? Why do you do it/them?
- What sport do you watch, and where?

# 43 Competitive sport

## A Winning and losing

In football, you can talk about the score [the number of goals a team has] like this:

Spain played Poland and they won the game.

= Poland lost the game.

Spain won 2–0 (spoken as *two nil*).

= Poland lost 2–0.

Spain beat Poland (2–0). (NOT Spain ~~won~~ Poland.)

= Poland lost (2–0) to Spain.

Spain defeated Poland (2–0).

= Poland were defeated (2–0) by Spain.

Spain and Italy drew 1–1 (spoken as *one all*) OR It was a 1–1 draw between Spain and Italy.

### Language help

The **score** at the end of a game is also the **result**.

The final score/result was 2–0. The score at half-time was 1–0. (NOT The ~~result~~ at half-time was 1–0.)

## B Competitions

A **competition** is an organised event in which people try to win something by being the best, the fastest, etc. **Individuals**, such as tennis players Serena Williams or Rafael Nadal, and **teams** such as Manchester United, take part in [join with others in] different types of competition. Tennis players and golfers enter **tournaments** such as the French Open; football and ice hockey teams play in **league competitions**, where they play against different teams. Many teams also play in **cup competitions** (similar to tournaments), e.g. the FA Cup or the World Cup, which ends with two teams playing against each other in a **final**. The winners (*opp* the losers) are the **champions**, e.g. Spain became World Cup champions in 2010, and Iker Casillas received the cup as captain of the winning team.

## C Reporting sports events

In one of the most **incredible races** of all time, Jamaican Usain Bolt ran a time of 9.69 seconds to win the Olympic 100 metres final, and **break** his own world **record**<sup>1</sup>. It was an **outstanding** race, and Bolt was celebrating his **victory**<sup>2</sup> fifteen metres before he reached the finishing line.

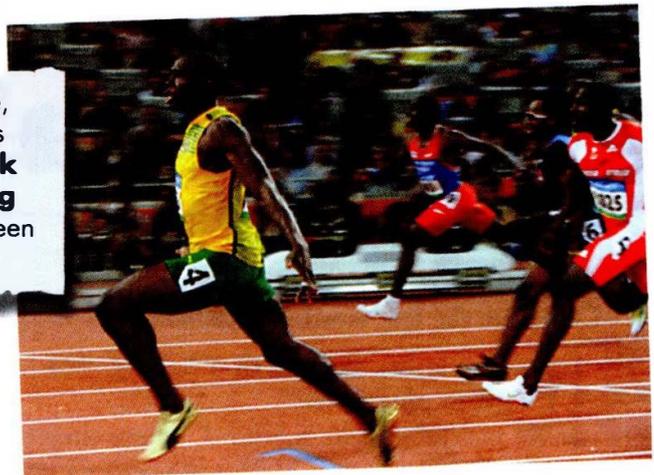
<sup>1</sup> run faster than anyone in the world before

<sup>2</sup> when you win a game/race; *opp* defeat

Kim Clijsters won the women's US Open last night for the second time. She first won the **championship**<sup>3</sup> in 2005, but **gave up**<sup>4</sup> tennis in 2007 to have a baby. She returned in 2009, and is the first mother to win a grand slam for 29 years.

<sup>3</sup> an important competition to decide who is the best

<sup>4</sup> stopped playing



There was a **superb** race for the Canadian Grand Prix. The **winner**<sup>5</sup>, Lewis Hamilton, passed Mark Webber with 20 laps of the race remaining and won by two seconds. He now **leads**<sup>6</sup> the drivers championship with 109 points.

<sup>5</sup> the person who wins

<sup>6</sup> is in front of others during a competition, e.g. At half-time, Milan are leading 1–0.

### Language help

**Superb**, **incredible** and **outstanding** can describe something or someone that is very good and of a very high quality, e.g. *Pelé was a superb footballer.*

# Exercises

## 43.1 Complete the verb forms with the correct past tense and past participle.

- |                                      |                           |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1 win / <u>won</u> / <u>have won</u> | 4 draw / ..... / .....    |
| 2 lose / ..... / .....               | 5 break / ..... / .....   |
| 3 beat / ..... / .....               | 6 give up / ..... / ..... |

## 43.2 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences. Sometimes both are correct.

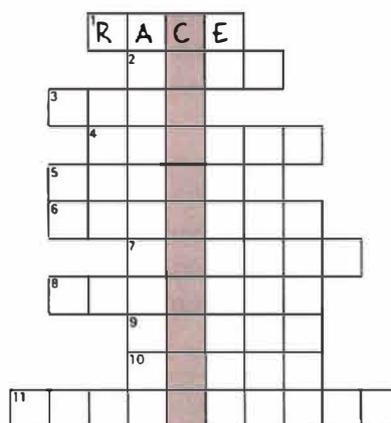
- It was a fantastic victory / *defeat* for the team.
- Lionel Messi was *outstanding* / *incredible* for Barcelona.
- At half-time in the game, the *score* / *result* is 1–0 to Arsenal.
- The French Open is a famous tennis *cup* / *tournament*.
- Croatia *beat* / *defeated* Germany 3–2.
- We *won* / *beat* the other team 4–1.
- The UEFA Cup is a great *competition* / *league*.

## 43.3 Complete the sentences.

- It was a good game but unfortunately we *lost* ..... 3–2.
- The ..... at half-time was 2–1, but the final ..... was a draw.
- Holland ..... England 2–1, so they are in the semi-final.
- Brazil ..... 1–1 with Argentina last night.
- Venus Williams has won the Wimbledon ..... at least five times.
- Carolina Klüft broke the heptathlon world ..... again last night.
- There are 20 teams in the ....., and each team plays the other teams twice.
- Bradley Wiggins ..... part in the *Tour de France* last year and finished fourth.
- I think Roger Federer is going to win. He's ..... 5–2 in the final set.
- Argentina are playing ..... Brazil next week.

## 43.4 Complete the crossword. What is the vertical word in grey?

- competition in which people run, drive, etc.
- the opposite of *win*
- a group of people who play together
- a synonym for *outstanding*
- stop doing a regular activity
- the leader of a team
- someone who wins something
- when you win a competition
- the last part of a competition
- the opposite of *winner*
- a type of sports competition



## 43.5

### Over to you

Answer the questions. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

- Have you ever taken part in a sports competition?
- Have you ever won anything?
- Have you ever been captain of a team?
- Have you ever come first, second or third in a race?
- Have you ever watched an individual or team in a final, at the game or on television?

## A Books

“I used to hate literature<sup>1</sup> at school, but now I read a lot. I started off with fiction<sup>2</sup>. I read hundreds of novels<sup>3</sup>, mostly thrillers<sup>4</sup> and science fiction<sup>5</sup>. My favourite author<sup>6</sup> is John le Carré.

Recently, I've started reading quite a lot of biographies<sup>7</sup>, and even some poetry<sup>8</sup>. Two of my favourite poets are Antonio Machado and Federico García Lorca. They both wrote poems in the early 20<sup>th</sup> century.”

<sup>1</sup> serious and important writing

<sup>2</sup> stories about imaginary people and events

<sup>3</sup> fiction books

<sup>4</sup> exciting stories, often about crime

<sup>5</sup> stories about the future

<sup>6</sup> someone who writes books

<sup>7</sup> stories of a person's life, written by another person

<sup>8</sup> pieces of creative writing in short lines

## B Films

How do you decide which films you are going to see?

If it's a **horror film** [a film that makes people frightened, e.g. *Dracula*], I usually go and see it. I love horror films.

For me, the **film director** [the person who tells the actors what to do, e.g. Spielberg] is the most important thing. I always go and see the latest film [the newest, most recent] by directors I really like such as Pedro Almodóvar.

I look to see **what's on** [what films are being shown at the cinema], and go to anything that I **fancy seeing** [want to see; *informl*].

I'm not interested in films that are **serious or complicated** [difficult to understand]; I only go to the cinema for **entertainment** [things you see or do to enjoy yourself].

I like **comedies** [films that are funny] and especially **romantic comedies** [comedies that have a love story]. I'll go and see anything that Ashton Kutcher is in!

If a film gets **good reviews** [opinions in a newspaper or magazine], then I often go and see it.

If there's a **big star** [a famous actor] in it, then I am more likely to see it. I don't normally go and see films if I don't recognise the names of the actors [the people who are in films].

## Language help

noun	person	verb
entertainment	<b>entertainer</b>	<b>entertain</b>
review	<b>reviewer</b>	<b>review</b>
<b>acting</b>	actor	<b>act</b>
<b>directing</b>	director	<b>direct</b>

# Exercises

44.1 Find twelve more words, across or down, connected with books and films.

act .....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....

L	I	T	E	R	A	T	U	R	E
P	E	S	A	U	T	H	O	R	T
A	C	T	O	R	N	R	G	D	R
C	H	F	I	C	T	I	O	N	E
T	A	P	U	R	F	L	S	F	V
E	N	O	V	E	L	L	T	I	I
P	O	E	T	R	Y	E	A	L	E
C	O	M	E	D	Y	R	R	M	W

44.2 Cross out one wrong word in each sentence. Write the correct word at the end.

- 1 Many ~~poems~~ are around 300 pages. novels .....
- 2 Cinema grew in popularity in the first half of the 20<sup>th</sup> year. ....
- 3 I enjoy science fiction because I like stories about the past. ....
- 4 What's happening at the cinema? .....
- 5 We went to see the film because there was a good article in the newspaper. ....
- 6 I've been reading a new autobiography of Alfred Hitchcock by Donald Spoto. ....
- 7 Comedies should make people frightened. ....

44.3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word on the right.

- 1 William Wordsworth is a very famous poet .....
  - 2 I thought the film was good .....
  - 3 Johnny Depp is one of my favourite .....
  - 4 My daughter wrote a lovely ..... for her school magazine.
  - 5 I thought the ..... in the film was a bit unnatural.
  - 6 I like him very much; he's a great .....
  - 7 I didn't agree with what the ..... said.
  - 8 Who's your favourite ..... ?
- POETRY  
ENTERTAIN  
ACT  
POETRY  
ACT  
ENTERTAIN  
REVIEW  
DIRECT

44.4 Complete the dialogue.

- A: What's <sup>1</sup> on ..... at the cinema?  
 B: Er, there's the <sup>2</sup> ..... film by Fernando Meirelles. It only came out yesterday.  
 A: Oh, the guy who <sup>3</sup> ..... *City of God*. He's a very good <sup>4</sup> ....., but I don't understand some of his films – they're a bit <sup>5</sup> ..... for me. Anything else <sup>6</sup> ..... ?  
 B: Well, a couple of romantic <sup>7</sup> ....., which may be fun. And they're showing *The Kite Runner* again.  
 A: Oh, what's that?  
 B: It's a film based on the <sup>8</sup> ..... by Khaled Hosseini. It's a very good book. Do you <sup>9</sup> ..... seeing that?  
 A: Yeah, why not.

44.5

## Over to you

Answer the questions. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

- 1 Do you read novels or poetry? If so, what do you like? Who are your favourite authors?
- 2 Do you go to the cinema? If so, how do you decide which films to go and see?
- 3 Do you often read film reviews?
- 4 What are your favourite films? Who are your favourite actors?

## A Musical taste\*

People's taste in music is different. I like pop music, my brother likes folk music [music written and played in a traditional style], and my dad prefers classical music.

My brother and I like going to concerts to see groups perform [play] live [in front of a large group of people, called an audience; pronounced to rhyme with *five*]. My dad just listens to music at home; he isn't interested in live performances.

When I listen to music I am mostly interested in the **tune** [the musical notes], but my brother is more interested in the **lyrics** [the words of a song].

\*the type of music that you like

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

## Common mistakes

Classical music (NOT *classie music*)

## B Musical instruments and musicians



## C People in music

A **composer** is someone who writes music, usually classical music.

A **songwriter** is someone who writes songs, e.g. Paul McCartney, Sting, Chris Martin.

A **conductor** is someone who stands in front of an orchestra [a large group of musicians who play different instruments] and conducts [leads] them.

An **opera singer** is someone who sings opera. [a play in which the words are sung]

A **ballet dancer** is someone who dances in a ballet.

A **solo artist** is someone who sings or plays music but is not part of a group, e.g. Beyoncé, Jay-Z, etc.

Famous groups/bands are Coldplay, U2, etc.

## D Making an album

When groups record an **album** [put eight or ten songs onto one CD] or a **single** [one song on a CD], they do it in a **recording studio**. Then, when the album comes out [is in the shops for people to buy], it is usually advertised in the media [there are adverts on TV, in newspapers, etc.]. As well as buying CDs, many people also download their favourite tracks [individual songs from an album] or albums from the Internet.

# Exercises

## 45.1 Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

- |             |                                     |              |
|-------------|-------------------------------------|--------------|
| 1 classical | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | a studio     |
| 2 solo      | <input type="checkbox"/>            | b singer     |
| 3 recording | <input type="checkbox"/>            | c music      |
| 4 musical   | <input type="checkbox"/>            | d dancer     |
| 5 opera     | <input type="checkbox"/>            | e artist     |
| 6 ballet    | <input type="checkbox"/>            | f instrument |

## 45.2 Complete the sentences.

- There was a very big audience for their last concert – nearly 10,000 people.
- I think their new ..... is a great song.
- The new ..... has songs written by other people. It ..... out next week.
- I've listened to a lot of their music but I've never seen them perform .....
- Their new album was ..... in a studio near my home.
- The band has a new album out and it's being ..... on TV.

## 45.3 Find five more pairs of words. Why are they pairs?

flute ballet audience album dancing orchestra concert  
conductor flautist composer classical music recording studio

A flautist is a person who plays a flute.  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

## 45.4 Can you complete this music quiz with words from the opposite page?

- Chris Martin is the main singer and songwriter for his group Coldplay.
- The Berlin Philharmonic is an ..... . Herbert von Karajan was the ..... from 1955 to 1989.
- Placido Domingo and Luciano Pavarotti were both great .....
- Waterloo* was Abba's first Number 1 hit .....
- Sergeant Pepper* is the most famous ..... by The Beatles.
- Eric Clapton is a great rock .....
- Yo Yo Ma is a great classical .....
- Rachmaninoff is a famous .....
- Puccini composed ..... such as *La Bohème*.
- Who was the very famous ..... artist who sang *Thriller*?

## 45.5

### Over to you

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

www.irLanguage.com

Answer the questions. If possible, ask someone else the same questions.

- What music do you like? Is your taste in music different from your parents'?
- Who's your favourite solo artist, group or composer?
- What was the last single or album you bought or downloaded?
- When was the last time you heard or saw a group or orchestra perform live?
- Are you usually more interested in the tune or the lyrics of a song?
- Do you play a musical instrument? What do you play?

# 46 Special events

## A A fireworks display

The Sydney fireworks<sup>1</sup> display<sup>2</sup> is held<sup>3</sup> every year, and more than one million people gather<sup>4</sup> at Sydney harbour<sup>5</sup> on New Year's Eve to celebrate<sup>6</sup> the new year.

All age groups are involved<sup>7</sup> in the event. At 9 pm there is 'Family fireworks' for families with younger children. After that a large number of boats parade<sup>8</sup> around the harbour. Finally, at midnight, there is a spectacular<sup>9</sup> fireworks display for almost fifteen minutes in which more than 4,000 kilograms of fireworks light up the night sky.

<sup>1</sup> (see picture)

<sup>2</sup> a show for people to watch

<sup>3</sup> organised

<sup>4</sup> come together

<sup>5</sup> area of water where ships are kept and are safe from the sea

<sup>6</sup> do something enjoyable on a special day

<sup>7</sup> included (in an event or activity)

<sup>8</sup> move around as part of a group, often to celebrate something (*parade* is also a noun)

<sup>9</sup> looking extremely good or exciting



## B An arts festival

The Edinburgh Festival<sup>1</sup> is an annual<sup>2</sup> event, and is the largest arts festival in the world. It consists of<sup>3</sup> at least six different festivals which take place<sup>4</sup> in the city and last<sup>5</sup> for almost six weeks during August and early September. The most popular<sup>6</sup> festival is The Fringe, which has up to<sup>7</sup> 500 daily performances in dance, music, drama and comedy in 180 places across the city.

<sup>1</sup> a number of special events often continuing for several days

<sup>2</sup> happening once a year

<sup>3</sup> is made of

<sup>4</sup> happen

<sup>5</sup> continue

<sup>6</sup> liked by many people

<sup>7</sup> the maximum (is 500)

## C The Chinese Spring Festival



The Spring Festival (or Chinese New Year) is the biggest traditional festival in China. It has been celebrated for about 4,000 years, and takes place every year at some point between 21 January and 20 February. On the day before the festival starts, people from all over<sup>1</sup> China return to their family homes and gather for a big meal. The next day, many people dress up<sup>2</sup>, and children receive money from their parents in red envelopes to bring them luck. Another popular custom is to put two-line poems on the gates outside each home.

<sup>1</sup> everywhere (in China)

<sup>2</sup> wear special clothes

### Language help

A **custom** is something that people usually do. A **tradition** is a very old custom that has continued for a long time. The adjectives are **traditional** and **customary**.

*It is traditional to give each other presents.*

*It is customary to take your shoes off before you enter a mosque.*

*We went to a traditional Greek wedding (NOT a Greek-traditional wedding).*

www.irLanguage.com

# Exercises

## 46.1 Complete the definitions.

- 1 A display is a show for people to watch .....
- 2 If you are involved in an activity, you are ..... in it.
- 3 If you can have up to 25 people, 25 people is the .....
- 4 If an event is spectacular, it looks very good or .....
- 5 A harbour is a place where ..... are kept.
- 6 If people parade round the streets, they ..... round the streets in a group.

## 46.2 Rewrite the sentences using the word in capitals. Keep a similar meaning.

- 1 The festival happens in the summer. TAKE The festival takes place in the summer .....
- 2 The children wear special clothes. DRESS .....
- 3 People come from everywhere in Japan. ALL .....
- 4 They hold the event every year. HELD .....
- 5 Do you do anything special for your birthday? CELEBRATE .....
- 6 The festival happens every year. ANNUAL .....

## 46.3 Complete the text.

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

The Fallas is a <sup>1</sup> traditional <sup>2</sup> ..... in Valencia, Spain, which <sup>3</sup> ..... for five days and finishes on March 19th. The Fallas <sup>4</sup> ..... place right across the city, and it <sup>5</sup> ..... St Joseph, as well as the end of winter and the birth of spring. The festival <sup>6</sup> ..... of music, dancing, cooking (the famous paella) and parades, and each area in the city produces a falla, which is a figure made of paper, cardboard, wood, etc. that is burnt on the final day. The fallas are very important, and artists spend months making them.

But the festival is also famous for <sup>7</sup> ..... fireworks displays. Every day crowds <sup>8</sup> ..... in different parts of the city at 2 pm, when loud firecrackers are set off. <sup>9</sup> ..... displays continue every night, and on the final night, there is a huge display when all the fallas are burned. This is called the Crema.



## 46.4

### Over to you

www.irLanguage.com

Think about a festival you know and answer the questions. If possible, ask someone else.

- 1 What kind of festival is it? Is it an arts festival or a traditional festival?
- 2 How often is it held?
- 3 When and where does it take place?
- 4 How long does it last?
- 5 What does it consist of?
- 6 Are there any special traditions or customs as part of the festival?

### A Departure\*

When you arrive at an airport, the **departures board** will show you the **flight numbers** (e.g. BA735), **departure times** (e.g. 08.40), and **destinations**<sup>1</sup>.

At **check-in / the check-in desk**, someone will check your ticket and **weigh**<sup>2</sup> your **luggage**. If it is more than, for example, 20 kilograms, you will have to pay **excess baggage**<sup>3</sup>. You can take your **hand luggage** with you on the **aircraft**<sup>4</sup>. You also get your **boarding card**<sup>5</sup> and then you can go through

**passport control**, where someone checks your **passport**<sup>6</sup>, and into the **departure lounge**, where you can buy things in the **duty-free shop**, e.g. **cigarettes** and **perfume**.

Shortly before **take-off**<sup>7</sup>, you go to the place where you get on the plane, e.g. **Gate 3** or **Gate 5**. When you **board the plane**<sup>8</sup>, you can put your **hand luggage** in a small cupboard above your seat called an **overhead locker**.

You then have to **fasten your seat belt**. If there are no **delays**<sup>9</sup>, the plane moves slowly to the **runway**<sup>10</sup>, then it takes off.

\* when you leave a place, at the start of a journey

<sup>1</sup> where the flights are going to

<sup>2</sup> see how heavy something is

<sup>3</sup> pay extra for your luggage

<sup>4</sup> plane

<sup>5</sup> a piece of paper you must show to get on the plane

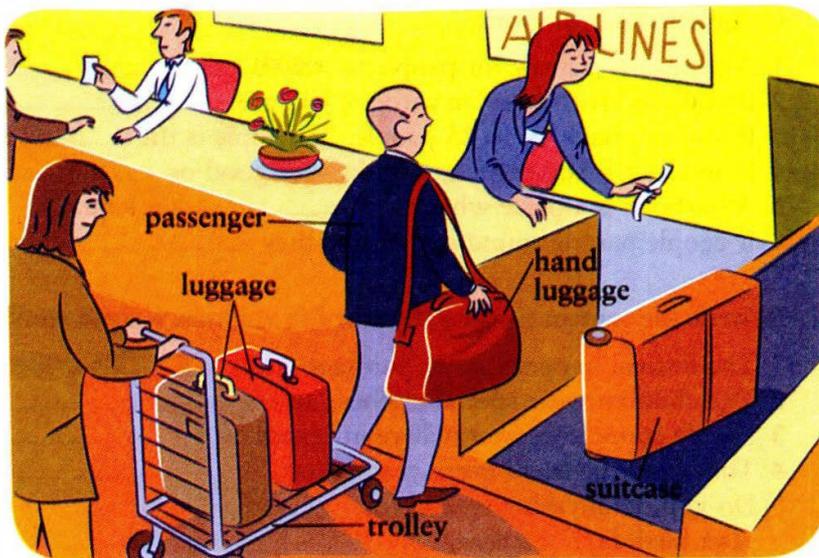
<sup>6</sup> looks at your passport carefully

<sup>7</sup> when the plane takes off / leaves the ground

<sup>8</sup> get on the plane

<sup>9</sup> when you have to wait longer than expected

<sup>10</sup> the large road that planes use for take-offs and landings



مرجع زبان ایرانیان



fastening a seatbelt

### Common mistakes

www.irLanguage.com

My **flight** number is BA640. (NOT My **fly** number is BA640.) I **slept** the whole **flight**. (NOT I **slept** the whole **fly**.)

### B Arrival\*

When the plane **lands**<sup>1</sup>, there is always an **announcement**<sup>2</sup> from a member of the **cabin crew**<sup>3</sup> telling passengers to wait until the plane completely stops before they stand up. Then you get off the plane and walk through the **terminal building**<sup>4</sup> to the **baggage reclaim**<sup>5</sup>. When you've got your luggage, you go **through customs**<sup>6</sup> and leave the airport.

\* when someone or something arrives

<sup>1</sup> arrives on the ground

<sup>2</sup> spoken information to a group of people

<sup>3</sup> the people on the aircraft who look after the passengers

<sup>4</sup> the airport building

<sup>5</sup> the place where you collect your luggage

<sup>6</sup> go through the area where your luggage may be checked to make sure you don't have anything illegal.

# Exercises

## 47.1 Complete the words or phrases using words from the box.

board	number	crew	card	control	luggage
reclaim	free	baggage	building	desk	locker

- |                           |                   |
|---------------------------|-------------------|
| 1 departures ..board..... | 7 flight .....    |
| 2 excess .....            | 8 overhead .....  |
| 3 check-in .....          | 9 boarding .....  |
| 4 hand .....              | 10 cabin .....    |
| 5 terminal .....          | 11 baggage .....  |
| 6 duty .....              | 12 passport ..... |

## 47.2 Answer the questions.

- 1 What's the place where the airline staff check your ticket? the check-in desk
- 2 Who are the people that travel on a plane? .....
- 3 What do airline staff weigh at the check-in desk? .....
- 4 What's the piece of paper they give you at the check-in desk? .....
- 5 What do we call the place you're travelling to? .....
- 6 What do airport staff do at passport control? .....
- 7 What do we call the place where you get on the plane? .....
- 8 What do you call the bags that you can take on the plane with you? .....
- 9 What's the part of the airport where the plane takes off and lands? .....

## 47.3 Complete the email.

Hi Tom

I've just arrived in Rome but I'm still recovering from a really terrible <sup>1</sup> flight. When we were in the airport in Manchester there was an <sup>2</sup> ..... telling us that there would be a one-hour <sup>3</sup> ..... because of bad weather, but when we finally <sup>4</sup> ..... the plane, there was a further delay before we could <sup>5</sup> ..... There was more bad weather over France, and we all had to <sup>6</sup> ..... our seat belts, which worried me a bit. In fact, I was almost sick, but the cabin <sup>7</sup> ..... were really nice.

It was still raining and very windy when we <sup>8</sup> ..... in Rome and I was really glad to get off the plane and get into the <sup>9</sup> ..... building. I really hope the return <sup>10</sup> ..... is a lot better.

See you soon.

Ellie

## 47.4

### Over to you

Answer the questions. If you don't fly very much, ask someone else.

- 1 What is the best part and the worst part of the flight?
- 2 When do you often have delays, and why?
- 3 What do you usually do on the aircraft during the flight?
- 4 What's the first thing you do on arrival?
- 5 Do you ever have anything to declare when you go through customs?

## A Hotel facilities and rooms

www.irLanguage.com

**Hotel Le Rouge** ★★★★★

The hotel is located near The Louvre, Notre Dame and top department stores right in the **heart**<sup>1</sup> of Paris.  
 Hotel **facilities** include: **room service**<sup>2</sup>, **internet access**<sup>3</sup>, **air conditioning**<sup>4</sup> and **parking**.  
 Our choice of **single**<sup>5</sup>, **double**<sup>6</sup> or **twin**<sup>7</sup> rooms are all equipped with **satellite TV**<sup>8</sup>, air conditioning, direct-dial telephone, **mini-bar**<sup>9</sup>, and personal **safe**<sup>10</sup>. Bathrooms come with a bath or shower and hair dryer.


<sup>1</sup> centre<sup>2</sup> staff will bring food and drink to the room<sup>3</sup> use of the Internet<sup>4</sup> a system that keeps the air cool<sup>5</sup> a room for one person<sup>6</sup> a room for two people with one big bed<sup>7</sup> a room for two people with two beds<sup>8</sup> TV with many channels from different countries<sup>9</sup> a small fridge<sup>10</sup> a box to keep money and valuable items in

## B Staying in a hotel

Rooms are often available<sup>1</sup> during the week, but many hotels are **fully booked**<sup>2</sup> at weekends or during the holidays, so you may need to **book a room**<sup>3</sup> in advance<sup>4</sup>. When you arrive, you check in at reception<sup>5</sup>; at the end of your stay<sup>6</sup>, you check out<sup>7</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> you can find one<sup>2</sup> all the rooms are taken<sup>3</sup> arrange/plan to have a room; *syn* reserve<sup>4</sup> before you go<sup>5</sup> say you have arrived and get your room key<sup>6</sup> the period of time you spend in a place<sup>7</sup> pay your bill and leave the hotel

## C Going to a restaurant

It's often a good idea to **book a table / make a reservation** if you go to a restaurant at the weekend. Many restaurants offer three-course meals which **include** [have as part of the meal] a **starter** (e.g. soup), **main course** (e.g. meat or fish) and **dessert** (e.g. fruit with ice cream). Prices sometimes include **10% service** as well [amount of money you pay for being served by the waiter]. If service isn't included, it's normal to leave a **tip** [extra money you give to the waiter/waitress].

## D Ordering a meal

WAITER: Are you ready to order? [Have you decided what to eat?]

CUSTOMER: Yes, I think so. I'd like to start with the spicy prawns, and then I'll have the fillet steak, with French fries and a mixed salad [lettuce with other vegetables].

WAITER: How would you like your steak? (Rare, medium or well-done?)

CUSTOMER: Medium, please. And I'd like some mineral water as well.

WAITER: Still or sparkling?

CUSTOMER: Er, sparkling.

## Common mistakes

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

I'll have the steak. (NOT I+take the steak.)



# Exercises

48.1 Put the words into the correct columns. Write titles for the other two groups.

rare	starter	mini-bar	sparkling	main course
room service	medium	dessert	still	well-done
				safe

steak			water
rare			

48.2 Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

- |                |                                     |                |
|----------------|-------------------------------------|----------------|
| 1 service      | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | a room         |
| 2 room         | <input type="checkbox"/>            | b access       |
| 3 double       | <input type="checkbox"/>            | c meal         |
| 4 three-course | <input type="checkbox"/>            | d conditioning |
| 5 main         | <input type="checkbox"/>            | e service      |
| 6 internet     | <input type="checkbox"/>            | f TV           |
| 7 air          | <input type="checkbox"/>            | g included     |
| 8 satellite    | <input type="checkbox"/>            | h course       |

48.3 Complete the sentences.

- Have you booked a room .....
- Could you first check in at .....
- Do you want a single or a .....
- Does the price include .....
- I ..... the soup, and then the fish for my main course.
- The hotel ..... included internet access, 24-hour reception and a restaurant.
- Service wasn't included, so I left a 10% .....
- The hotel is in the ..... of the town, close to all the main attractions.
- Would you like a ..... salad with your main .....
- At the end of your ..... at a hotel, you normally have to ..... out by midday.

48.4 Rewrite the sentences on the left starting with the words given. Keep a similar meaning.

- |  |                                    |
|--|------------------------------------|
| 1 I was able to use the Internet.        | I had internet <u>access</u> ..... |
| 2 Did you book a table?                  | Did you make a ..... ?             |
| 3 The hotel was fully booked.            | There were no rooms .....          |
| 4 You don't pay extra for service.       | Service is .....                   |
| 5 Did you book it before you went?       | Did you book it in ..... ?         |
| 6 Is there somewhere to leave the car?   | Do you have ..... ?                |
| 7 Have you decided what you want to eat? | Are you ready ..... ?              |

48.5

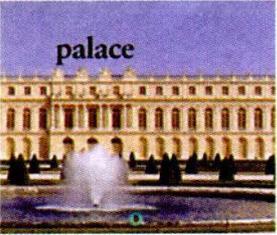
## Over to you

You are staying in a hotel in your own country. Are these facilities important to you? Why? / Why not?

- |                 |                      |                  |                 |
|-----------------|----------------------|------------------|-----------------|
| mini-bar        | 24-hour room service | air conditioning | satellite TV    |
| internet access | parking              | restaurant       | a personal safe |

# 49 Sightseeing holidays

## A Things to see

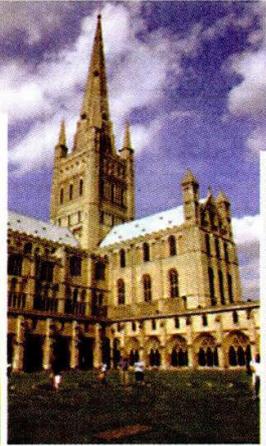


palace

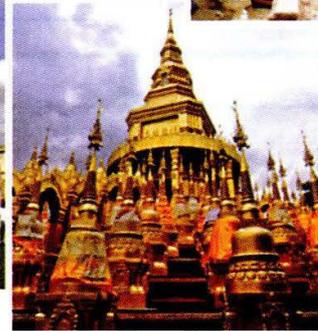
fountain



mosque



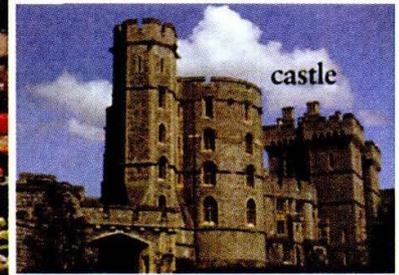
cathedral



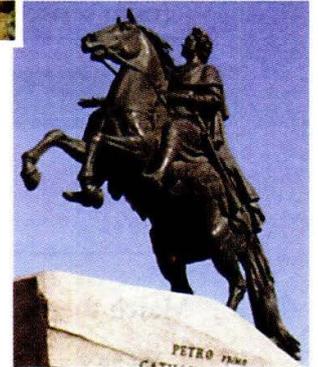
temple



market



castle



statue

## B Tourist activities

activity	example
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>go sightseeing [visit famous places; also see the sights]</li> </ul>	We went sightseeing almost every day. I like to see the sights when I visit a place.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>do a bit of / a lot of sightseeing</li> </ul>	I didn't do a lot of sightseeing in Warsaw.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>have a look round [visit a place casually, often on foot]</li> </ul>	We had a look round the shops. I want to have a look round the museum.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>explore [go round a new place to see what is there]</li> </ul>	We explored the flower market.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>go out [leave home / your hotel to go to a social event, e.g. restaurant or theatre]</li> </ul>	On holiday we went out every night.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>get lost [lose one's way]</li> </ul>	I got lost three times in London.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>have a great/nice/terrible time</li> </ul>	They had a lovely time in Venice.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>buy souvenirs [something you buy or keep to remember a place or holiday]</li> </ul>	We bought some dolls as souvenirs.

www.irlanguage.com

## C Describing places

The word **place** can describe a building, an area, a town, or country, e.g. Bruges is a lovely **place** [town] and we found a really nice **place** [hotel] to stay.

“The **guidebooks** [books with information about places] say the Alhambra in Granada is **magnificent** [very good or very beautiful], but it's always **packed** [very crowded] with tourists in the summer.”

“São Paulo is a **lively place** [full of life and activity], and there's **plenty** [a lot] to do in the evening.”

“St Petersburg has lots of **historic monuments** [important places built a long time ago] but the Hermitage Museum was the **main attraction** for me [something that makes people come to a place or want to do a particular thing].”

“If you go to Poland, it's definitely worth visiting Kraków.”

### Language help

We use **worth + noun/-ing** to say that it is a good idea to do something or go somewhere. *It's worth hiring a car if you go to Scotland. Glasgow is worth a visit as well.*

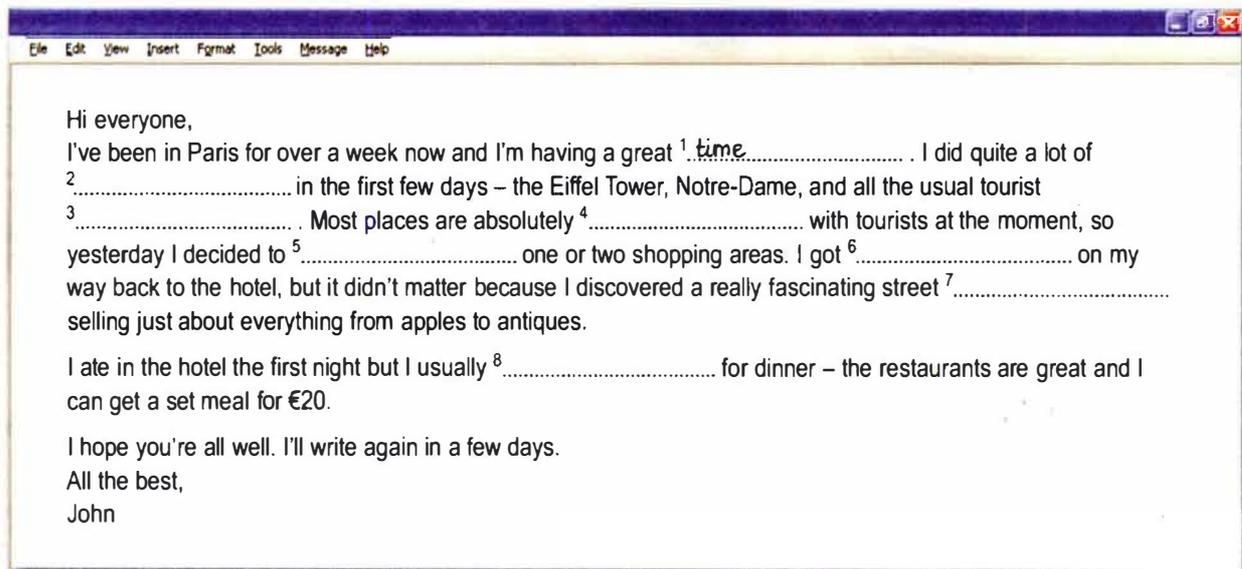
مرجع زبان ایرانیان

# Exercises

## 49.1 Tick (✓) the words which refer to religious places.

castle	church ✓	temple
statue	market	cathedral
fountain	mosque	palace

## 49.2 Complete the email.



## 49.3 Complete the dialogues, but without using a word from the question.

- A: It's a fabulous city, isn't it?  
B: Yes, it's a wonderful place .....
- A: It was very crowded, wasn't it?  
B: Yes, it was absolutely .....
- A: It's lively in the evening, isn't it?  
B: Yes, there's .....
- A: Did you enjoy yourselves?  
B: Yes, we had a .....
- A: Kyoto is a good place to go to, isn't it?  
B: Yes, Kyoto is definitely .....
- A: You know a lot about this castle, don't you?  
B: Yes, I bought a .....
- A: St Petersburg has got many famous old places to see, hasn't it?  
B: Yes, lots of historic .....
- A: The Taj Mahal was impressive and so beautiful.  
B: Yes, it was .....
- A: Did you explore the town centre?  
B: Yes, we had a .....

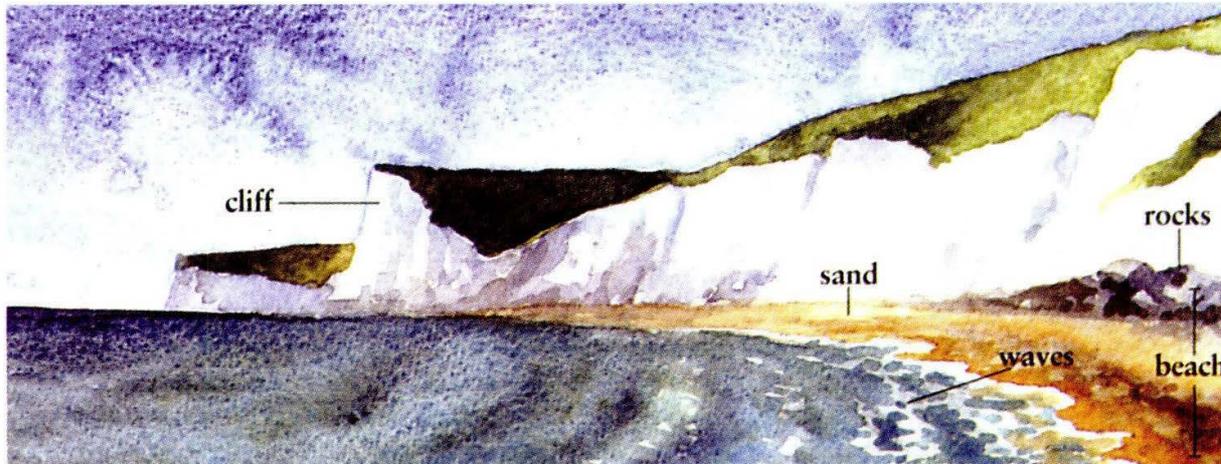
## 49.4

### Over to you

Think about your own country and write answers. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

- Write down a place that is worth visiting and a place that is not worth visiting and say why.
- Is there a place that is particularly famous for its historic monuments? What are they?
- What typical souvenirs do tourists buy when they visit?
- What are the main attractions for tourists to your country? Do you think they are worth seeing?

## The beach



Many people spend their holiday at the coast [the land close to the sea], where there are a lot of seaside resorts [towns by the sea for tourists] and they can go to the beach every day. Generally people prefer beaches that are sandy [with lots of sand], where you can go for a stroll [a casual walk] along the shore [the place where the sea meets the land] in the sunshine [when it is sunny]. On the beach, you also sometimes get a breeze [a nice gentle wind] that blows off the sea.

## Beach activities



surfing



windsurfing



diving



playing volleyball



sunbathing

Volleyball is a popular beach game and some people enjoy water sports such as surfing, windsurfing or diving. If the sea is calm<sup>1</sup>, you can go for a swim, but a lot of people just want to lie on the beach and sunbathe and get a nice (sun)tan<sup>2</sup>. However, there are now worries about the dangers of sunbathing. People who lie in the sun without any protection<sup>3</sup> can get sunburn<sup>4</sup>, and worse still, they are at risk of<sup>5</sup> getting skin cancer. Doctors now recommend<sup>6</sup> that people do not sit in the sun without using sunscreen<sup>7</sup>. It may be safer just to sit in the shade<sup>8</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> without waves (does not move very much); *opp* rough

<sup>2</sup> when the skin becomes brown

<sup>3</sup> something to keep someone safe

<sup>4</sup> when the skin becomes red and very sore

<sup>5</sup> if you are at risk of something, there is a danger that something bad may happen to you

<sup>6</sup> say what someone should do

<sup>7</sup> cream that gives protection from the sun; *syns* sunblock, sun cream

<sup>8</sup> an area where there is no light from the sun, so it is darker and less hot

## Language help

www.irLanguage.com

We can go for a walk, a drive (a journey in the car for pleasure), a swim, a coffee [drink some coffee], a drink (often an alcoholic drink, e.g. wine, beer). We can also have a swim, a coffee, a drink.

*We went for a drive along the coast. I had a coffee at Caffé Nero. Let's go for a drink tonight.*

# Exercises

50.1 Write down four more words beginning with *sun*.

sun shine ..... sun ..... sun ..... sun ..... sun .....

50.2 Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

- |              |                                     |           |
|--------------|-------------------------------------|-----------|
| 1 sun        | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | a shade   |
| 2 wind       | <input type="checkbox"/>            | b sea     |
| 3 seaside    | <input type="checkbox"/>            | c surfing |
| 4 sit in the | <input type="checkbox"/>            | d tan     |
| 5 sandy      | <input type="checkbox"/>            | e resort  |
| 6 rough      | <input type="checkbox"/>            | f beach   |

50.3 Cover the opposite page. What are these people doing?



1 playing  
volleyball



2 .....



3 .....



4 .....



5 .....

50.4 Cross out the wrong answer.

- |                 |                   |                   |                   |               |
|-----------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|---------------|
| 1 The beach was | a lovely          | b <del>calm</del> | c sandy           | d dirty       |
| 2 We went for a | a drive           | b shop            | c drink           | d stroll      |
| 3 The sea was   | a sandy           | b calm            | c rough           | d cold        |
| 4 I enjoy       | a surfing         | b diving          | c getting sunburn | d windsurfing |
| 5 We walked     | a along the beach | b by the shore    | c on the waves    | d on the sand |
| 6 The beach was | a near the cliffs | b by the breeze   | c by the rocks    | d very sandy  |

50.5 Complete the sentences.

- I love sunbathing, so I can get a nice suntan .....
- Doctors ..... that you stay out of the sun completely in the middle of the day.
- We used to sunbathe for hours, but then we didn't know we were at ..... of getting skin cancer.
- I always take a beach umbrella to give me ..... from the sun when it is very hot.
- In the city it feels like there's no air, but you often get a nice ..... by the sea.
- I love going for a ..... along the beach, especially in the evening when it's quiet.
- I don't like sitting in the sun; I prefer to sit in the .....
- We decided to ..... a swim before lunch.

50.6

## Over to you

Answer the questions. If possible, ask someone else the same questions.

- Do you ever spend time at seaside resorts? Where do you go, and how often?
- Do you enjoy any of the beach activities on the opposite page? Which ones?
- Do you like sunbathing? Why? / Why not?
- Do you get a suntan easily? Have you ever had sunburn? Do you often use sunscreen?
- What do you like to do in the evening after a day on the beach?

# Answer key

## Unit 1

1.1 *Your own answers*

1.2 *Your own answers*

1.3 *Your own answers*

1.4 2 temporary 3 cruel/unkind 4 rough 5 exit/way out 6 alive 7 refuse

1.5 2 argument 4 choose 6 difference; differ  
3 revision 5 expansion 7 communication; communicative

1.6 *Your own answers*

## Unit 2

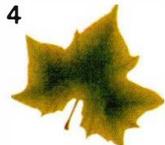
2.1	food	garden	numbers
	diet, lay the table, flour, raw, butcher, frozen, e.g. <i>frozen peas</i>	branch, dig, ground, leaf, butterfly, frozen, e.g. <i>the ground is frozen</i>	count, add up, minus, thousand, zero

2.2 *Possible answers:*

2 translation

3 a person who sells meat

4



5 translation

6 put plates, knives, forks, etc. on a table before a meal

7 translation is probably the easiest way

8 six minus four is two ( $6 - 4 = 2$ )

2.3 2 (synonym) A synonym for *awful* is *dreadful*.

3 (opposite) The opposite of *necessary* is *unnecessary*.

4 (word partner and part of speech) You *translate* something *into* another language; the noun is *translation*.

5 (meanings) *Tip* has two meanings: a piece of advice, and money you give a waiter for serving you.

6 (grammar and part of speech) *Enjoy* is followed by an *-ing* form; the noun is *enjoyment*, the adjective is *enjoyable*.

2.4 *Your own answers*

## Unit 3

3.1 2 really 5 clothes 8 beautiful  
3 unfortunately 6 comfortable 9 unbelievable  
4 especially 7 accommodation 10 necessary

3.2 1 knee (k) 2 comb (b) 3 castle (t) 4 salmon (l) 5 receipt (p)

3.3 2 amount 3 behave 4 official 5 emphasise 6 relating to

- 3.4 2 The 'z' spelling is usual in American English, but both are possible in British English.  
 3 an adverb  
 4 uncountable  
 5 on  
 6 She's an old friend; he's my best friend; you make friends with people. You may also have found these common word partners (a close friend, a friend of mine)
- 3.5 1 definition 3 2 definition 1 3 definition 4 4 definition 2

## Unit 4

### 4.1

parts of speech	punctuation	pronunciation
noun, adjective, adverb, preposition	comma, question mark, full stop	phonemic symbol, stress, syllable

- 4.2 2 in Seville (preposition) 7 wonderful hotel/place (noun)  
 3 took/got a train (verb) 8 to Spain (preposition)  
 4 a beautiful city (indefinite article) 9 never stays (adverb)  
 5 expensive hotel (adjective) 10 if I have (pronoun)  
 6 of money (preposition)

- 4.3 2 a capital letter 7 phrasal verbs  
 3 a full stop 8 punctuation  
 4 a question mark 9 with (phonemic) symbols  
 5 a comma 10 late  
 6 uncountable noun

- 4.4 'English 2 in'formal 3 'opposite 3 'syllable 3  
 de'cide 2 'adjective 3 edu'cation 4 pronun'ciation 5

- 4.5 2 cheaply; dangerously 3 find 4 un- 5 -ness

## Unit 5

- 5.1 2 Thai 7 Arabic  
 3 Spanish 8 German  
 4 Israel 9 England/the UK, the USA, Australia  
 5 China 10 (Swiss) German, French, Italian  
 6 Portuguese

- 5.2 2 Asia / the Far East 5 the Caribbean  
 3 the Middle East 6 South America  
 4 Europe

- 5.3 Chinese; Japan; Portuguese; Egyptian; Australia; Arabic; Saudi Arabia; Scandinavia

- 5.4 2 Turkey 3 South Korea 4 Russia 5 Argentina 6 Greece

- 5.5 2 Germans 5 Brazilians 7 The Swiss  
 3 the Japanese 6 the British 8 Russians  
 4 Israelis

### 5.6 Possible answers:

- 1 I'm French.  
 2 The capital of France is Paris. I think the population of France is about 60 million.  
 3 French.  
 4 I can speak Italian and English.  
 5 I have visited Germany, Spain, Italy and the UK.  
 6 I don't know the Far East, so I would like to visit China and Japan.

## Unit 6

- 6.1** 2 in the west                      4 in the north-east      6 in the north-east  
3 in the south-west                5 in the north-west      7 in the south

- 6.2** 2 coldest place on Earth / in the world      6 waterfall  
3 hottest place on Earth / in the world      7 rainforest in the world  
4 Cave    8 ocean  
5 Canal    9 planet

- 6.3** 2 covered    8 consists  
3 regions    9 Earth  
4 contrasts    10 climate  
5 covers     11 distance; distance  
6 landscape    12 minus; degrees  
7 temperature

**6.4** *Possible answers:*

- 1 In England, 30°C is about the highest; minus 5 degrees is about the lowest during the day.
- 2 I like the fact it isn't too hot or too cold, but I would like more sun and less rain.
- 3 It's flatter in the east, and there are more hills in the west. There is also an area in the north of England with some large lakes. There are more mountains in Scotland.
- 4 We have a number of long canals, and lots of caves. We don't have any famous waterfalls.
- 5 It's very hilly, with several large rivers nearby.
- 6 I live in a medium-sized town which is ten miles from Bristol.

## Unit 7

- 7.1** 2 f    3 g    4 c    5 a    6 b    7 d

- 7.2** 2 It's snowing.    3 It's cloudy.    4 It's raining.    5 It's icy.    6 It's sunny.

- 7.3** 2 False. It's not nice to sit outside when it's freezing. / It's nice to sit outside when it's warm  
3 True  
4 False. A shower is a short period of rain.  
5 True  
6 False. If it's humid, the air will feel warm and wet.  
7 False. A mild winter means it is warmer than usual.  
8 True

- 7.4** 2 cold    5 degrees; zero; extremely      8 temperature  
3 shower    6 thunderstorm                      9 cool  
4 pouring    7 came

**7.5** *Possible answers for England:*

We sometimes get humid weather in the summer. We occasionally get thick fog in the winter, especially in the morning. We sometimes get storms in winter. Thunderstorms sometimes occur in the summer at the end of a period of hot weather. Temperatures below zero are not common during the day, but do occur at night in the winter. We sometimes get strong winds in the autumn and winter, and showers can be frequent at any time of the year, but especially in the spring.

## Unit 8

**8.1**

farm animals	wild animals	insects
horse, goat, bull, pig, donkey	monkey, elephant, tiger, camel, leopard	fly, bee, mosquito, ant, butterfly

- 8.2** 3 different                      6 different                      9 different  
 4 different                      7 same                      10 different  
 5 same                      8 different

- 8.3** 2 wild    3 cage    4 insects    5 rare    6 protect

- 8.4** 2 Monkeys                      4 Whales                      6 Snakes                      8 Parrots  
 3 Camels                      5 Giraffes                      7 Elephants

**8.5** *Possible answers:*

- 1 Yes. I've got a dog called Max.
- 2 No.
- 3 I don't like seeing birds in cages, but I can understand why we need to keep some wild animals in zoos.
- 4 I'm not frightened of animals, but I don't like it when birds get inside the house and fly around the rooms; it's scary!

**Unit 9**

- 9.1** DOWN: heel, knee, chest, ankle, chin  
 ACROSS: cheek, hip, elbow, lip(s), skin

- 9.2** 2 c    3 a    4 f    5 b    6 d

- 9.3** 2 lips    3 chin    4 shoulder    5 waist    6 cheek    7 neck    8 chest

**9.4** *Possible answers:*

- |   |                        |
|---|------------------------|
| 2 running   | 6 when they mean 'no'  |
| 3 when someone says something funny                         | 7 when they mean 'yes' |
| 4 when they see someone they know or say goodbye to someone | 8 when they're sad     |
| 5 when they have a cold                                     | 9 when they're tired   |

**Unit 10**

- 10.1** 2 looking    3 hair    4 shoulders    5 smart    6 height    7 dark

- 10.2** Your **height** is how **tall** you are.  
 Your **weight** is how much you weigh.  
**Roughly** and **approximately** are similar in meaning.  
**Medium** and **average** are similar in meaning.  
**Broad** and **narrow** are opposite in meaning.  
**Wavy** and **curly** are similar in meaning, and describe hair.

- 10.3** 2 gorgeous                      5 pretty                      8 roughly/approximately  
 3 attractive/handsome                      6 overweight                      9 tallish  
 4 athletic                      7 ordinary

**10.4** *Possible answers from a man:*

- 1 I'm about one metre 78.
- 2 It's dark brown and quite wavy.
- 3 My girlfriend is about one metre 68. She's very attractive in my opinion, and she's got short blonde hair, which is straight. I don't know how much she weighs; I wouldn't ask her that.

## Unit 11

11.1

positive	negative
nice	unpleasant
generous	mean
sensible	silly
hard-working	lazy
calm	nervous

11.2 2 unfriendly 3 unpleasant 4 impatient 5 dishonest 6 unreliable

11.3 2 mean 5 shy 8 calm  
3 unreliable 6 sensible 9 creative  
4 patient 7 serious 10 talented

11.4 2 nervous 5 humour 8 character  
3 wish 6 clever/intelligent 9 stupid  
4 lazy 7 trust 10 kind

11.5 *Possible answers:*

I think I am quite positive (2), very reliable (1), not very confident (3), a bit lazy (4), have quite a good sense of humour (2) and am quite impatient (5).

I would like to be creative and more patient; I would hate to be mean.

## Unit 12

12.1 Nouns: jealousy, confusion, disappointment, anxiety  
Adjectives: proud, curious, emotional

12.2 2 f 3 d 4 b 5 a 6 e

12.3 scared 6 cheerful 5 upset 3 confused 2 depressed 4

12.4 2 feelings/emotions 6 mood  
3 energetic 7 hopeful  
4 effect 8 frightened/scared  
5 stress

12.5 *Possible answers:*

1 I'm not sure that colour does, but the weather certainly affects me. I feel more positive when the sun is shining, and rain makes me depressed.

2 I think I suffer from stress sometimes at work, or if I have too many things on my mind.

3 I don't think my mood changes much from day to day.

4 I feel more energetic in the evening.

## Unit 13

13.1 2 niece 5 brother-in-law 8 only  
3 nephew 6 elder  
4 sister-in-law 7 cousin

13.2 2 Remarry 6 Twins  
3 Relatives/Relations 7 Mate  
4 best 8 Friendship  
5 old 9 stepfather

13.3 2 married 3 altogether 4 since 5 get on (well) 6 ex

13.4 *Possible answers for Laura, aged 20:*

- 1 I have an elder sister called Rosie.
- 2 Yes, very well.
- 3 No, not especially close, but we all get on well.
- 4 My cousin Daniel; he got married last year.
- 5 Anita.
- 6 I've known her for nine years.
- 7 We started secondary school at the same time.

## Unit 14

14.1 2 early twenties 5 middle-aged 8 an adult  
3 mid-thirties 6 elderly 9 teens  
4 teenager 7 retired 10 toddler

14.2 2 True 5 False. At first life wasn't easy.  
3 False. Her parents were very strict. 6 False. She managed to get a job in Cardiff.  
4 True

14.3 2 in the end I did it 8 managed to pass my exams  
3 roughly/about my age 9 stayed out late  
4 nearly thirty now 10 let me wear what I liked  
5 strict 11 childhood  
6 allowed to stay up and watch TV 12 retired  
7 brought up in Scotland

14.4 *Possible answers:*

- 1 I was brought up in a town called Dartmouth.
- 2 It's on the coast and I remember going to the beach a lot with my family and friends.
- 3 My mum was quite strict, but not my dad. They didn't let me swim in certain places because they thought it was dangerous.
- 4 Up to the age of 17, I had to be home on the last bus, which was about 11:15. When I learnt to drive, I stayed out later than that.

## Unit 15

15.1 I went out with Simon. 3  
We got married. 5  
I got pregnant three months later. 8  
We got engaged. 4  
I got to know Simon. 2  
Our son was born just after our first anniversary. 9  
We went on our honeymoon. 7  
I met Simon at a party. 1  
We had a big reception. 6

15.2 2 date 4 pregnant 6 bride; (bride)groom  
3 marriage 5 anniversary 7 give

15.3 1 couple  
2 to know; wedding  
3 ceremony; honeymoon  
4 left; wrong; his own; divorced / a divorce

#### 15.4 Possible answers:

- 1 I was 14 or 15 and I went to a party with a girl called Yvonne.
- 2 Yes, it was at university when I was about 20. Her name was Liz and we were together for almost three years.
- 3 The last wedding I went to was my cousin's, who got married to a man I had never met.
- 4 I went to a friend's 30<sup>th</sup> birthday party.

### Unit 16

#### 16.1 Possible answers:

have a late night / an early night / a sleep / a wash / a shower / a bath / a snack / a light lunch  
do the washing / the ironing / the housework / the shopping

#### 16.2 2 h 3 e 4 c 5 f 6 b 7 a 8 d

- |                                 |   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| 2 usually wakes me up           | 7 don't bother with a full meal                   |
| 3 have a snack in the afternoon | 8 have cereal for breakfast                       |
| 4 go out on Friday              | 9 housework; fortunately/luckily I have a husband |
| 5 friends come round            | 10 I try to reply to them straight away           |
| 6 eat out at the weekend        |   |

- |           |              |            |
|-----------|--------------|------------|
| 2 instead | 4 early      | 6 takeaway |
| 3 stay in | 5 come round | 7 chat     |

#### 16.5 Possible answers:

##### Similar

- 1 I usually have a light lunch.
- 2 I have my main meal in the evening.
- 3 I sometimes have a bath instead of a shower in the winter.

##### Different

- 1 I usually wake up before 7.00 am.
- 2 I have a shower in the morning.
- 3 I do my own washing because I don't have a cleaner.

### Unit 17

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 2 False. They used to live in the centre of town. | 7 False. A French couple live upstairs. |
| 3 False. They rent their flat.                    | 8 False. The parents own a cottage.     |
| 4 True  | 9 True                                  |
| 5 False. They live on the second floor.           | 10 True                                 |
| 6 True  |   |

- 17.2 Positive: air conditioning, character, charming  
Negative: dark, no central heating

#### 17.3 2 a lift 3 a balcony 4 a cottage 5 front door 6 steps

- |                  |             |               |
|------------------|-------------|---------------|
| 2 on; downstairs | 5 outskirts | 8 floor; lift |
| 3 space          | 6 balcony   | 9 moved       |
| 4 location       | 7 heat      | 10 light      |

#### 17.5 Possible answers:

I live in a house, which I own, and it's near the centre of town. I've lived here for seven years now. I used to live in a house in London, but I moved because I didn't need to be in London for my job. I've got central heating where I live, but I haven't got air conditioning or a balcony.

## Unit 18

- 18.1** 2 in the microwave                      4 in the washing machine                      6 in a cupboard  
3 in the oven                                  5 in the dishwasher (or sink)                      7 in the freezer

- 18.2** 2 sink, in the kitchen  
3 curtains, in the living room or the bedroom  
4 cushions, in the living room  
5 kettle, in the kitchen  
6 washbasin, in the bathroom  
7 carpet, in the living room or the bedrooms  
8 pillow, in the bedroom  
9 washing machine, in the utility room or the kitchen  
10 cooker, in the kitchen  
11 armchair, in the living room  
12 tiles, in any room, though more likely in the kitchen or bathroom

- 18.3** 2 wooden                                      5 share; own                                      8 blanket; duvet  
3 choice    6 spare    9 en suite  
4 study    7 tap(s)    10 utility

**18.4** *Possible answers:*

- 1 tiles    2 tiles    3 carpet and a couple of rugs    4 curtains    5 a duvet

**18.5** *Possible answers:*

- I like big sofas with lots of cushions.  
I prefer a wooden floor with rugs.  
I have no preference – it depends on the blinds and the curtains.  
I prefer a duvet.  
I must have two pillows. I can't stand only one pillow.

## Unit 19

- 19.1** 2 spill/spilt/spilt                                      5 run out/ran out/run out  
3 burn/burnt/burnt                                      6 tear/tore/torn  
4 fall over/fell over/fallen over                                      7 hit/hit/hit

- 19.2** 2 h    3 f    4 g    5 c    6 a    7 b    8 e

- 19.3** 2 over    5 hopeless    8 hit  
3 clear    6 mood    9 fell  
4 remove    7 slipped (fell over is also possible)                                      10 worse

**19.4** *Possible answers:*

- 2 I dropped it on the floor.  
3 I fell over. / I slipped and fell over.  
4 There's something wrong with the TV.  
5 I forgot it. / I left it at home.  
6 It isn't working properly.  
7 It's out of order.

**19.5** *Possible answers:*

- I occasionally drop cups or glasses, usually when I'm drying them.  
We run out of bread or milk quite regularly, and I have to go out and buy some.  
I fell over in the snow last week, but I don't usually fall over very much.  
I sometimes forget people's names, which is embarrassing.  
I occasionally burn food.  
I don't spill things very often.  
I always leave my glasses lying around and then I can't find them when I need them.

## Unit 20

- 20.1 2 No 3 No 4 No 5 Yes 6 Yes 7 Yes 8 No 9 Yes 10 Yes
- 20.2 2 a bank loan 3 fee(s) 4 cash 5 rent 6 cashpoint 7 currency
- 20.3 2 She wasted the money. 5 He charged us £25.  
3 I can't afford to go. 6 I owe a lot of money.  
4 We could hire a car. 7 I always check my account carefully.
- 20.4 2 account 3 amount 4 earn 5 owe 6 pay (them) back 7 accommodation

### 20.5 Possible answers:

- 1 Yes, I've had an account for about fifteen years.  
2 I don't check my account very often. (see next answer)  
3 I get money from a cashpoint about once a week, and I always ask for a receipt so that I know how much is in my account.  
4 I had a bank loan to buy my first car – that's all.  
5 Yes, I'm saving up for a holiday.  
6 Yes, I rent a flat with a friend. We had to pay a deposit of one month's rent.

## Unit 21

- 21.1 3 different 4 different 5 same 6 different 7 same 8 different
- 21.2 3 a 4 a 5 a 6 – 7 – 8 a 9 – 10 a
- 21.3 2 sick 5 bleeding 8 serious  
3 hurts 6 suffer  
4 bandage 7 aches
- 21.4 people have heart attacks  
surgeons perform operations  
tablets/pills are common forms of medicine  
hepatitis affects the liver  
people have sore throats

### 21.5 Possible answers:

- 1 I take tablets such as aspirin.  
2 I hardly ever get a cough or sore throat.  
3 No, I haven't been a patient.  
4 I had to go into hospital for a minor operation, but I didn't have to stay overnight.  
5 We have various tablets for pain, e.g. paracetamol or Ibuprofen. We usually have different medicines for colds and flu, or for stomach problems.

## Unit 22

22.1	Items of clothing	Jewellery	Parts of clothing
	boots, top, jumper, scarf, cap, tights	earrings, ring, bracelet, necklace	button, zip, pocket, sleeve, collar

- 22.2 2 The first woman is wearing a necklace; the second isn't.  
3 The first woman has four pockets on her jacket; the second has two.  
4 The first woman has two buttons on her jacket sleeve; the second has one.  
5 The second woman is wearing earrings; the first isn't.  
6 The second woman is wearing a bracelet; the first isn't.
- 22.3 2 in 5 suit 8 undid  
3 dressed 6 up 9 rucksack  
4 on 7 into 10 dressed



- 24.3** 2 shopping centres                      5 shopping centres  
 3 street markets                            6 both, but probably more true of shopping centres  
 4 street markets

- 24.4** 2 makes; replace                      5 offer                                      8 atmosphere  
 3 throw    6 entrance                                9 likely  
 4 queue    7 range

**24.5** *Possible answers:*

- 1 I go to a supermarket once a week. I don't like shopping there, but it is convenient.
- 2 I hardly ever go to shopping centres. I don't like them very much.
- 3 I go to a small food market once a week. I really like it because you get to know the people who have the stalls and they often sell things which are a bit different.
- 4 I don't often haggle for things; I'm not very good at it.
- 5 I take things back to shops if there is something wrong with them, and usually I get a refund.

**Unit 25**

- 25.1** 1 vegetable: *pea(s)*                      fruit: peach, pear, pineapple  
 2 vegetable: garlic                            fruit: grapes  
 3 vegetable: mushroom                      fruit: melon  
 4 vegetable: spinach                            fruit: strawberry  
 5 vegetable: onion                              fruit: olive

**25.2** lettuce/chicken, aubergine/tomato, onion/mushroom, prawn/pork, salmon/lamb

- 25.3** 2 cabbage, the others are all used in salad  
 3 crab, the others are all meat  
 4 peach, the others are all vegetables  
 5 broccoli, the others are all types of seafood  
 6 chicken, the others are all vegetables

**25.4** *These are the most likely answers:*

melon: NO    grapes: YES    peaches: YES or SOMETIMES  
 pears: YES or SOMETIMES    lemon: NO

- 25.5** 1 lamb; veal; pork                      4 a vegetarian  
 2 lettuce    5 bunch  
 3 oil and vinegar (oil and lemon is also possible)

**25.6** *Possible answers for the UK:*

- 1 Strawberries and pears are more common than pineapple.
- 2 Lamb and beef are more expensive than pork or chicken.
- 3 lettuce, tomato and cucumber; sometimes onion and red pepper as well
- 4 aubergine, red pepper, pineapple, melons, grapes or peaches
- 5 veal
- 6 Peaches are my favourite fruit. / Lamb is my favourite meat.

**Unit 26**

**26.1** fry, grill, roast, bake, barbecue

**26.2** raw – door; sour – hour; oven – love; pie – lie; saucepan – four

- 26.3** 2 ~~cooker~~ cook                              5 ~~good in~~ good at  
 3 ~~fry pan~~ frying pan                            6 ~~tastes~~ flavours  
 4 ~~sour~~ bitter



## Unit 29

- |      |                    |                      |                |
|------|--------------------|----------------------|----------------|
| 29.1 | 2 ride             | 5 run                | 8 fares        |
|      | 3 get in           | 6 fly                | 9 driver       |
|      | 4 journey          | 7 missed             | 10 off; stop   |
| 29.2 | 2 van              | 4 lorry (also truck) | 6 bicycle/bike |
|      | 3 motorbike        | 5 coach              |                |
| 29.3 | 2 journey          | 5 reliable           | 8 complaining  |
|      | 3 convenient; away | 6 queue              | 9 season       |
|      | 4 corner           | 7 return             | 10 platform    |

### 29.4 Possible answers:

- 1 Generally yes.
- 2 Prices vary a great deal in England. Sometimes a return is twice the price of a single, but sometimes it is not much more than a single.
- 3 Where I live is very convenient for the train station if I need to travel out of town.
- 4 No, I haven't got a season ticket, but they can often save you a lot of money.
- 5 I don't take taxis very often; only if I need to get home late at night.
- 6 I usually ride my bike once a week.

## Unit 30

- |      |                    |                       |                   |
|------|--------------------|-----------------------|-------------------|
| 30.1 | 2 pedestrians      | 4 pedestrian crossing | 6 brake           |
|      | 3 pavement         | 5 (road) junction     | 7 road sign       |
| 30.2 | 2 lane             | 5 motorway            | 8 (road) junction |
|      | 3 traffic light(s) | 6 bridge              |                   |
|      | 4 overtaking       | 7 bend                |                   |
| 30.3 | 2 lost             | 4 via                 | 6 ended           |
|      | 3 direct           | 5 way                 | 7 turning         |
| 30.4 | 2 accident         | 5 speed               | 8 damaged         |
|      | 3 approaching      | 6 swerve              | 9 injuries        |
|      | 4 overtake         | 7 crashed             |                   |

### 30.5 Possible answers for England:

- 1 Yes, it's 70 mph. (about 115 kph)
- 2 There are usually three lanes.
- 3 Yes, they do.
- 4 Not very often, but it sometimes happens if the road is very narrow.

## Unit 31

- 31.1
- 2 Mind the step
  - 3 Admission free
  - 4 Out of order
  - 5 No vacancies/entry/exit
  - 6 Do not lean out of the window / leave bags unattended
  - 7 Please queue other side
  - 8 Mind your head
  - 9 Please do not disturb / Please do not feed the animals
  - 10 Keep off the grass
  - 11 Keep right/left
  - 12 Silence examination in progress

- 31.2** 2 On a vending machine (a machine selling drinks and snacks)  
 3 In a zoo  
 4 In a hotel window  
 5 At a theatre  
 6 In a bank or post office  
 7 On a parcel
- 31.3** 2 Do not leave bags unattended      6 Mind your head  
 3 Please do not disturb                      7 Admission free  
 4 No parking                                      8 SILENCE – examination in progress  
 5 Do not lean out of the window
- 31.4** No exit, Silence – examination in progress, out of order, keep right, mind the step, no entry
- 31.5** *Possible signs in English you might see are:*  
 English spoken here  
 Entrance [you go in here]  
 Flat to let [advertising a flat that you can rent]  
 Cyclists dismount here [people on bicycles must get off their bikes here]  
 No through road [there is no way out for cars at the other end of this road]

### Unit 32

- 32.1** 2 c    3 h    4 a    5 f    6 d    7 e    8 b
- 32.2** 2 to look up the meaning of words  
 3 a plug  
 4 to rub something out  
 5 because you haven't got one (or someone else hasn't got one)  
 6 to highlight something  
 7 to sharpen a pencil  
 8 to measure something, or perhaps to underline something
- 32.3** 2 How do you pronounce 'swap'?    4 How do you use the word 'swap' in a sentence?  
 3 How do you spell 'swap'?
- 32.4** 2 Could you turn up the CD player?  
 3 Could you lend me a dictionary?  
 4 Could you repeat that, please?  
 5 Could you explain the difference between *lend* and *borrow*?  
 6 Could I borrow your ruler?  
 7 Could we swap places?
- 32.5** *Your own answers*

### Unit 33

- 33.1** 2 f    3 g    4 b    5 h    6 d    7 c    8 a
- 33.2** 2 primary    3 secondary    4 take; leave    5 stay    6 go (on)
- 33.3** 2 timetable    3 into    4 both are correct    5 break    6 break up  
 7 get    8 dress (you can wear what you want = you can dress the way you want)
- 33.4** 2 wear    3 male; female    4 trouble    5 punished    6 atmosphere
- 33.5** *Your own answers*

### Unit 34

- 34.1** 2 both are correct    3 up    4 revise for    5 do    6 both are correct    7 failed

- 34.2** 2 grade                      5 work                      8 hard work  
 3 candidates                  6 increase; basic        9 willing  
 4 essay                          7 vowels; consonants

- 34.3** 2 revision    3 my best    4 exam preparation    5 things wrong    6 ear for language

- 34.4** 2 accent                      4 accurate                  6 through  
 3 fluent                        5 understood               7 well

**34.5** *Your own answers*

**Unit 35**

- 35.1** 2 engineering    3 medicine    4 economics    5 law    6 architecture

- 35.2** I did a degree course.                      5  
 I passed with good grades.                2  
 I got a Master's.                              8  
 I did a postgraduate course.                7  
 I did my final exams at school.             1  
 I became an undergraduate.                4  
 I got a place at university.                 3  
 I got a degree in business studies.        6

- 35.3** 2 False. You have to get good grades in your school exams.  
 3 True  
 4 False. Most degree courses last three years.  
 5 True  
 6 False. If you are successful, you get a degree.  
 7 False. Students studying for their first degree are called undergraduates.  
 8 False. Science students do not write a lot of essays. (They spend their time in laboratories.) Arts students have to write a lot of essays.  
 9 True  
 10 False. If you study arts subjects you work in a library. / If you study science subjects you work in a laboratory.

- 35.4** 2 degree    3 went on    4 lasted    5 into    6 research    7 qualification

**35.5** *Your own answers*

**Unit 36**

- 36.1** 2 d    3 f    4 e    5 a    6 b

- 36.2** 2 sailor                              6 accountant  
 3 mechanic                        7 plumber, carpenter, electrician, builder, mechanic and surgeon  
 4 vet                                  8 doctor, surgeon, dentist, vet, pilot, electrician  
 5 pilot or builder                9 police officer, soldier, sailor, firefighter, pilot, doctor, vet

- 36.3** 2 A vet treats animals.  
 3 An architect designs buildings.  
 4 An electrician installs and repairs electrical things.  
 5 A lawyer represents people with legal problems.  
 6 A surgeon operates on people.  
 7 A mechanic repairs cars.  
 8 A dentist looks after people's teeth.  
 9 An engineer plans the building of roads, bridges, etc.

- 36.4** 2 Really? When did he join the navy?                      4 Really? When did she join the army?  
 3 Really? When did he join the air force?                    5 Really? When did he join the fire brigade?

**36.5** Possible answers:

My father is an accountant.

I have an uncle who is a doctor, and another who is retired. (He is 63 and no longer works.)

The man next door is a police officer, and his wife is a teacher.

I have another neighbour who is a journalist.

I have a friend in the army, another friend who is training to be a doctor, and a third friend who is an electrician.

**Unit 37**

**37.1** Words which are connected with money: earn, wages, salary, income

**37.2** 2 e 3 d 4 f 5 c 6 a

- 37.3**
- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 2 I work in marketing.                 | 7 What do you do for a living?                |
| 3 I work for the government.           | 8 My job involves reading government reports. |
| 4 My income is £22,000.                | 9 I give advice to clients.                   |
| 5 What does your job involve?          | 10 I made a complaint about the service.      |
| 6 I'm in charge of the reception area. |   |

- 37.4**
- |                          |              |            |
|--------------------------|--------------|------------|
| 2 runs / is in charge of | 7 overtime   | 12 off     |
| 3 responsible            | 8 earn/make  | 13 advises |
| 4 involves               | 9 conditions | 14 dealing |
| 5 day                    | 10 tax       | 15 fixed   |
| 6 five                   | 11 a         | 16 do/work |

**37.5** Your own answers

**Unit 38**

**38.1** 2 e 3 d 4 a 5 f 6 b

**38.2**

verb	noun	adjective
employ	(un)employment	(un)employed
promote	promotion	
retire	retirement	retired
resign	resignation	
succeed	success	successful
own	owner	

- 38.3**
- |                       |           |                 |
|-----------------------|-----------|-----------------|
| 2 abroad              | 6 work    | 10 own          |
| 3 part time           | 7 succeed | 11 own; success |
| 4 quit; rise          | 8 apply   | 12 application  |
| 5 experience; courses | 9 sack    |                 |

**38.4** Possible answers:

- Yes, I was promoted to hotel manager last year.
- I get a pay rise, but not always a good one.
- Yes, I went on a computer course last year.
- I would like to do a course on financial planning to help me with my current job.
- I have never been given the sack, but I resigned from my last job when I was given the opportunity to work for my present employer.

**Unit 39**

**39.1** 2 rubbish bin 3 filing cabinet 4 paperwork 5 noticeboard

**39.2** 2 colleagues 3 calendar 4 diary 5 invoice 6 calculator 7 loads

- 39.3** 2 arranged; appointment 4 attend / go to 6 involve; organise/arrange  
3 run out 5 show (them) round
- 39.4** 2 The photocopier isn't working. 5 We've run out of paper.  
3 We've got loads of work today. 6 Why is he absent this morning?  
4 I have to attend a meeting.

**39.5** *Possible answer:*

In my job as a dentist, I have to do quite a lot of paperwork, I send a few emails, I attend a few meetings, and I never use a photocopier. I don't show people round, I don't have to organise events or type letters, and I don't send out invoices. The only things I repair are people's teeth.

**Unit 40**

**40.1** Words which refer to people: expert, accountant, client, contacts

- 40.2** 2 demand 5 employees 8 job  
3 aim 6 set up 9 expanding  
4 firm/business 7 headquarters 10 a great deal

- 40.3** 2 take up 5 set up 8 take over  
3 clients 6 customer 9 a former  
4 ex- 7 currently

- 40.4** 2 They achieved a lot / a great deal.  
3 I have a lot of contacts in banking.  
4 They were formerly (called) BMG.  
5 It's always been my ambition to fly a plane.  
6 She's an expert in finance.  
7 The adverts attracted (a lot of) attention.

- 40.5** 2 firm/business/company 4 branch 6 expanded  
3 achieved/had 5 run 7 ambition/aim

**Unit 41**

- 41.1** 2 by 3 from 4 of 5 in 6 in 7 of

- 41.2** 2 a loan 3 interest 4 inflation 5 profit 6 trade 7 trend

- 41.3** 1 loan; charges; interest; pay back. ANSWER €600  
2 rate; % (per cent); pay back. ANSWER €575.

- 41.4** 2 figures 6 sharp 10 quarters  
3 increased / went up / rose 7 fall/decrease 11 risen / gone up  
4 made 8 loss 12 sharply  
5 raise/increase 9 stayed

**41.5** *Possible answers:*

- 1 About 2% 2 7-8% 3 Badly 4 2008-9 5 One British pound is 1.6 US dollars.

**Unit 42**

**42.1**

sport	person	place	verb	equipment
swimming, motor racing, basketball, skiing	golfer, athlete, goalkeeper, racing driver	court, track, pitch, rink	jump, box, race, sail	net, stick, skis, swimming costume

42.2 2 do 3 play 4 ski 5 did 6 go 7 do 8 keep 9 work out

42.3 2 swimming/swimmer 3 boxing/boxer 4 sailing/sailor 5 athletics/athlete

42.4 2 hockey 5 costumes 8 climbing  
3 courses 6 racing 9 tent  
4 fun/pleasure 7 fit 10 jogging

42.5 Possible answers:

- 1 In the winter I play football, and in the summer I play tennis and go swimming. It's not serious; I just do it for fun.
- 2 I watch a lot of sport on the TV: football, tennis, ice hockey, motor racing. In fact, I'll watch almost any sport if I have nothing else to do.

## Unit 43

43.1 2 lose / lost / have lost  
3 beat / beat / have beaten  
4 draw / drew / have drawn  
5 break / broke / have broken  
6 give up / gave up / have given up

43.2 2 both are correct 4 tournament 6 beat  
3 score 5 both are correct 7 competition

43.3 2 score; result (score is also possible) 7 league  
3 beat/defeated 8 took  
4 drew 9 leading  
5 championship/tournament 10 against  
6 record

43.4



43.5 Possible answers:

- 1 I've taken part in lots of competitions: football, cricket, rugby, swimming and athletics.
- 2 I won a cup competition at secondary school in football.
- 3 I was captain of the rugby team at secondary school.
- 4 I came first in a backstroke (swimming) race when I was at primary school, and at secondary school I won the 100 and 200 metres (athletics) on several occasions.
- 5 I've watched lots of finals on TV: the FA Cup, the World Cup, the UEFA Cup, Wimbledon, the French Open, the Olympics, and so on. I also went to Twickenham to see the rugby team I support in an important final of a cup competition. Unfortunately we lost.

## Unit 44

- 44.1** across: literature, author, actor, fiction, novel, poetry, comedy  
 down: poem, thriller, star, film, review
- 44.2** 2 ~~year~~ century                      5 ~~article~~ review  
 3 ~~past~~ future                              6 ~~autobiography~~ biography  
 4 ~~happening~~ on                          7 ~~frightened~~ laugh; or ~~comedies~~ horror films
- 44.3** 2 entertainment                      5 acting                              8 director  
 3 actors                                      6 entertainer  
 4 poem                                        7 reviewer
- 44.4** 2 latest                                      4 (film) director                      6 on                                      8 novel  
 3 directed                                    5 complicated                        7 comedies                            9 fancy
- 44.5** *Possible answers:*

- 1 I don't read poetry but I read lots of novels. I enjoy thrillers and I like the English writer William Boyd.
- 2 Yes, I go to the cinema quite a lot. There are certain directors whose films I always see, but usually I go and see films that have had good reviews, or films that friends recommend.
- 3 I read reviews in the Sunday paper.
- 4 My favourite films are *Godfather* 1 and 2, and part of the reason I like them is that they have three of my favourite actors: Robert De Niro, Al Pacino and Marlon Brando.

## Unit 45

- 45.1** 2 e    3 a    4 f    5 b    6 d
- 45.2** 2 single    3 album; comes    4 live    5 recorded    6 advertised
- 45.3** *Suggested answers:*  
 Ballet is a form of dancing that tells a story to music.  
 Audiences listen to concerts.  
 Albums are made in a recording studio.  
 The conductor stands in front of an orchestra.  
 A composer is someone who writes classical music.
- 45.4** 2 orchestra; conductor                      5 album                              8 composer  
 3 opera singers (tenors)                      6 guitarist                            9 operas  
 4 single    7 cello                                    10 solo; Michael Jackson

- 45.5** 1 I like rock music, pop and R&B. My taste in music is very different from my parents – they hate rock music!  
 2 My favourite artist is Beyoncé. I really like her song, *Single Ladies*.  
 3 I bought Alicia Keys' latest album earlier this year.  
 4 The last time I saw someone perform live was last year.  
 5 I'm interested in both the tune and the lyrics.  
 6 I play the guitar, but very badly!

## Unit 46

- 46.1** 2 included    3 maximum    4 exciting    5 ships/boats    6 move/walk
- 46.2** 2 The children dress up.  
 3 People come from all over Japan.  
 4 The event is held every year.  
 5 Do you celebrate your birthday? OR Do you do anything (special) to celebrate your birthday?  
 6 The festival is an annual event.

- 46.3** 2 festival 5 celebrates 8 gather  
 3 lasts 6 consists 9 Firework  
 4 takes 7 spectacular

**46.4** *Your own answers*

**Unit 47**

- 47.1** 2 excess baggage 6 duty free 10 cabin crew  
 3 check-in desk 7 flight number 11 baggage reclaim  
 4 hand luggage 8 overhead locker 12 passport control  
 5 terminal building 9 boarding card
- 47.2** 2 passengers 5 destination 8 hand luggage  
 3 luggage/suitcases 6 check your passport 9 runway  
 4 boarding card 7 gate
- 47.3** 2 announcement 5 take off 8 landed  
 3 delay 6 fasten 9 terminal  
 4 boarded 7 crew 10 flight

**47.4** *Possible answers:*

- The worst part of the flight for me is the take-off, and the best part is the landing because I'm just pleased when it's over. I don't like flying much.
- There are often delays in the winter when the weather is bad.
- I often think about the place I'm going to or the place I've just been to. Other than that, I read a book or watch a film. Occasionally I talk to the person sitting next to me.
- I try to get through customs quickly, so I can go home or start to enjoy my holiday!
- I never have anything to declare because I rarely buy things when I travel.

**Unit 48**

**48.1**

<i>steak</i>	<i>facilities</i>	<i>courses</i>	<i>water</i>
rare, medium, well-done	mini-bar, room service, safe	starter, main course, dessert	still, sparkling

- 48.2** 2 e 3 a 4 c 5 h 6 b 7 d 8 f

- 48.3** 2 reception 5 'll have 8 heart/centre  
 3 double/twin 6 facilities 9 mixed; course  
 4 service 7 tip 10 stay; check

- 48.4** 2 reservation 4 included (in the price) 6 parking  
 3 available 5 advance 7 to order

**48.5** *Possible answers:*

If I go to a hotel in my own country, I usually drive, so parking is very important. I also like to have satellite TV.

A restaurant is only important if there are no other good restaurants in the area. A mini-bar and air conditioning are great if it's in the summer and it is quite hot. I usually carry my money and credit cards with me, so I don't need a safe. I never use room service or need internet access, so they're not important at all.

**Unit 49**

- 49.1** Religious places are: temple, cathedral, mosque

- 49.2** 2 sightseeing 4 packed 6 lost 8 go out  
 3 attractions/sights 5 explore/visit 7 market

- 49.3** 2 packed                      4 great/lovely time                      6 guidebook                      8 magnificent  
 3 plenty to do                      5 worth seeing/visiting                      7 monuments                      9 look round

**49.4** *Your own answers*

**Unit 50**

**50.1** Any four of these: sunbathe, suntan, sunburn, sunscreen, sunblock, sun cream

**50.2** 2 c    3 e    4 a    5 f    6 b

**50.3** 2 sunbathing    3 surfing    4 diving    5 windsurfing

**50.4** 2 b    3 a    4 c    5 c    6 b

**50.5** 2 recommend                      4 protection/shade                      6 stroll/walk                      8 go for / have  
 3 risk                      5 breeze                      7 shade

**50.6** *Possible answers:*

- 1 I go to seaside resorts in the south-west of England, and sometimes the south of France, or the coast of Spain near Barcelona. I usually go once or twice a year.
- 2 I go for a swim; that's all.
- 3 No, I don't like sunbathing. It's boring and I get sunburn easily.
- 4 No, I don't get a suntan easily and I have had sunburn in the past. I might use sunscreen on my face. I usually wear a T-shirt or sit in the shade if it is very hot.
- 5 I like to go for a drink and then have a meal.



# Phonemic symbols

## Vowel sounds

<i>Symbol</i>	<i>Examples</i>
/i:/	sleep me
/ɪ/	happy recipe
/ɪ/	pin dinner
/ʊ/	foot could pull
/ʊ/	casual
/u:/	do shoe through
/e/	red head said
/ə/	arrive father colour
/ɜ:/	turn bird work
/ɔ:/	sort thought walk
/æ/	cat black
/ʌ/	sun enough wonder
/ɒ/	got watch sock
/ɑ:/	part heart laugh
/eɪ/	name late aim
/aɪ/	my idea time
/ɔɪ/	boy noise
/eə/	pair where bear
/ɪə/	hear cheers
/əʊ/	go home show
/aʊ/	out cow
/ʊə/	pure fewer

## Consonant sounds

<i>Symbol</i>	<i>Examples</i>
/p/	put
/b/	book
/t/	take
/d/	dog
/k/	car kick
/g/	go guarantee
/tʃ/	catch church
/dʒ/	age lounge
/f/	for cough photograph
/v/	love vehicle
/θ/	thick path
/ð/	this mother
/s/	since rice
/z/	zoo surprise
/ʃ/	shop sugar machine
/ʒ/	pleasure usual vision
/h/	hear hotel
/m/	make
/n/	name now know
/ŋ/	bring
/l/	look while
/r/	road
/j/	young
/w/	wear

ˈ This shows that the next syllable is the one with the stress.

ˌ This is used when some longer words have a second stress, less strong than on the main stressed syllable.

# Index

The numbers in the Index are **unit** numbers not page numbers.  
The pronunciation provided is for standard British English.

- a bit [slightly] ə bit 91  
 a great deal ə greɪt di:l 40  
 a laugh ə la:f 99  
 a little (bit) ə 'lɪtəl 91  
 a load of rubbish ə laʊd ɒv 'rʌbɪʃ 95  
 a long time ago ə lɒŋ taɪm ə'gəʊ 59  
 a paper ə 'peɪpə 100  
 a piece of sth ə pi:əs ɒv 'sʌmθɪŋ 86  
 a return ə rɪ'tɜ:n 29  
 a week/month/year (etc.) [every] ə wi:k mʌnθ jɪə 37  
 abbreviation ə,bri:v'i:ʃən 52  
 ability ə'bɪləti 70  
 able 'eɪbəl 70  
 above ə'baʊ 90  
 above all ə'baʊ ɔ:l 56  
 abroad ə'brɔ:d 38  
 absent 'æbsənt 39  
 absolutely 'æbsə'lʊ:tli 89  
 accent 'æksənt 34  
 accept ək'sept 1  
 access (to sth) 'ækses 48, 54  
 accident 'æksɪdənt 30  
 accommodation ə,kɒmə'deɪʃən 20  
 according to ə'kɔ:diŋ tu: 51, 66  
 accountant ə'kaʊntənt 36  
 accurate(ly) 'ækjərət 34  
 ache n, v eɪk 21  
 achieve ə'tʃi:v 40  
 achievement ə'tʃi:vmənt 40  
 act [do sth] ækt 57  
 act [perform] ækt 44  
 acting 'æktɪŋ 44  
 actor 'æktə 44, 70  
 actually 'æktʃʊəli 99  
 ad/advert æd'ædvɜ:t 100  
 add æd 26  
 add sth up æd 'sʌmθɪŋ ʌp 60  
 add to basket/bag æd tu: 'bɑ:skɪt/bæɡ 54  
 addition ə'dɪʃən 60  
 adjective 'ædʒɪktɪv 4  
 admin 'ædmɪn 37  
 admission əd'mɪʃən 31  
 adult 'ædʌlt 14  
 advantage əd'vɑ:ntɪdʒ 27  
 adverb 'ædvɜ:b 4  
 advert 'ædvɜ:t 45, 51, 100  
 advertisement əd'vɜ:tɪsmənt 51  
 advice əd'vaɪs 86  
 advise əd'vaɪz 37, 88  
 afford ə'fɔ:d 20  
 afraid (of) ə'freɪd 77  
 Africa 'æfrɪkə 5  
 after [follow sb/sth] 'ɑ:ftə 90  
 after [time/event] 'ɑ:ftə 92  
 after that 'ɑ:ftə ðæt 92  
 afterwards 'ɑ:ftəwədz 92  
 against [compete] ə'genst 43  
 against [touching] ə'genst 90  
 ages 'eɪdʒɪz 99  
 ages ago 'eɪdʒɪz ə'gəʊ 59  
 agree [have the same opinion] ə'gri: 66, 77  
 agree [say yes] ə'gri: 87  
 aim eɪm 40  
 air conditioning eə kən'dɪʃənɪŋ 17  
 air force eə fɔ:s 36  
 aircraft 'eəkra:ft 47, 73  
 airline 'eəlaɪn 73  
 airport 'eəpɔ:t 73  
 alarm ə'la:m 74  
 album 'ælbəm 45  
 alive ə'laɪv 14  
 all over [everywhere] ɔ:l 'əʊvə 19, 46  
 all the best ɔ:l ðə best 99  
 allow ə'laʊ 14  
 almost ɔ:l'mɔ:st 14  
 alone ə'ləʊn 15  
 aloud ə'laʊd 1  
 alphabet 'ælfəbet 34  
 also ɔ:l'səʊ 93  
 although ɔ:l'ðəʊ 93  
 altogether ɔ:l'tə'geðə 13  
 amazed ə'meɪzɪd 89  
 amazing [very good] ə'meɪzɪŋ 89  
 amazing [very surprising] ə'meɪzɪŋ 89  
 ambition æm'bɪʃən 40  
 American ə'merɪkən 5  
 among ə'mʌŋ 90  
 amount ə'maʊnt 3, 20  
 and so on ənd səʊ ɒn 100  
 anger 'æŋɡə 12  
 angrily 'æŋɡrɪli 91  
 ankle 'æŋkəl 9  
 anniversary ,ænrɪ'vɜ:səri 15  
 announcement ə'naʊntsmənt 47  
 annoyed ə'nɔɪd 89  
 annoying ə'nɔɪɪŋ 89  
 annual 'ænjʊəl 46, 71  
 answerphone 'ɑ:nsəfəʊn 52  
 ant ænt 8  
 antique n æn'ti:k 62  
 anti-virus software 'æntɪ 'vaɪrəs 'sɒftweə 53, 54  
 anxiety æŋ'zaiəti 12  
 anxious 'æŋkɪəs 12  
 anyway [more importantly] 'eniweɪ 92  
 anyway [returning to an earlier subject] 'eniweɪ 99  
 apart from ə'pa:t frəm 75  
 apartment ə'pɑ:tmənt 17  
 apologise for sth ə'pɒlədʒaɪz fɔ: 'sʌmθɪŋ 64, 98  
 apology ə'pɒlədʒɪ 64  
 appear [become visible] ə'pɪə 69  
 appear [seem] ə'pɪə 85  
 appearance ə'pɪərəns 10  
 application (computer) ,æplɪ'keɪʃən 53  
 application (job) ,æplɪ'keɪʃən 38, 98  
 apply for sth ə'plai fɔ: 'sʌmθɪŋ 38  
 appointment ə'pɔɪntmənt 39  
 approach ə'prəʊtʃ 30  
 approximately ə'prɒksɪmətli 10, 14  
 Arabic 'ærəbɪk 5  
 architect 'ɑ:kɪtekt 35, 36  
 architecture 'ɑ:kɪtektʃə 35  
 Argentina ,ɑ:dʒən'ti:nə 5  
 Argentinian ,ɑ:dʒən'tɪniən 5  
 argue 'ɑ:gju: 1  
 argument [angry discussion] 'ɑ:gjəmənt 1  
 argument [reason to think] 'ɑ:gjəmənt 97  
 armchair 'ɑ:mtʃeə 18  
 army 'ɑ:mi 36, 58  
 arrange ə'reɪndʒ 39  
 arrangement ə'reɪndʒmənt 39  
 arrest ə'rest 55  
 arrival ə'raɪvəl 96  
 article 'ɑ:tɪkəl 51  
 artist 'ɑ:tɪst 70  
 arts ɑ:ts 35  
 as [because] æz 94  
 as [when] æz 92  
 as a result æz ə rɪ'zʌlt 94, 97  
 as if/though æz ɪf ðəʊ 85  
 as long as æz lɒŋ æz 94  
 as soon as æz su:n æz 92  
 as well (as) æz wel 93  
 Asia 'eɪzə 5  
 ask sb for sth ɑ:sk 'sʌmbɒdi fɔ: 'sʌmθɪŋ 87  
 ask sb the way ɑ:sk 'sʌmbɒdi ðə weɪ 30  
 assistance ə'sɪstəns 95  
 at [place] æt 90  
 at [@] æt 54  
 at all æt ɔ:l 66  
 at first æt 'fɜ:st 14, 92  
 at home æt həʊm 19  
 at least æt li:st 1, 61  
 at night æt naɪt 27  
 at once æt wʌns 75

- at the end æt ði end 78  
at the moment æt ðə 'məʊmənt 78  
at the same time æt ðə seɪm taɪm 59  
athlete 'æθli:t 42  
athletic æθ'letɪk 10  
athletics æθ'letɪks 42  
atmosphere 'ætməsfɪə 24, 33  
attachment ə'tætʃmənt 54  
attack n ə'tæk 58  
attack v ə'tæk 55  
attempt n, v ə'tempt 72, 87  
attend ə'tend 33, 39  
attendance ə'tendəns 39  
attitude 'ætɪtju:d 67  
attract attention ə'trækt ə'tenfən 40  
attraction ə'trækʃən 49  
attractive ə'træktɪv 10  
aubergine 'əʊbəʒi:n 25  
audience 'ɔ:diəns 45  
Australia ɔs'treɪliə 5  
Australian ɔs'treɪliən 5  
author 'ɔ:θə 44  
available ə'veɪləbəl 48, 98  
average [typical] 'ævərɪdʒ 10  
avoid ə'vɔɪd 87  
aware of ə'weə ɒv 77  
away [distance] ə'weɪ 28, 29, 61  
awful 'ɔ:fəl 89  
babysitter 'beɪbɪ,sɪtə 73  
back up sth bæk ʌp 'sʌmθɪŋ 53  
backache 'bækək 21  
backpack 'bækpæk 22  
backup 'bækʌp 53  
bag bæɡ 63  
baggage reclaim 'bæɡɪdʒ rɪ'kleɪm 47  
bakery 'beɪkəri 40  
balcony 'bælkəni 17  
bald bɔ:ld 84  
ballet (dancer) 'bæleɪ 45  
ballot 'bælət 56  
bandage 'bændɪdʒ 21  
bank (of a river) bæŋk 28  
bank account bæŋk ə'kaʊnt 20  
bank loan bæŋk ləʊn 20  
bar (of chocolate) bɑ: 63  
barbecue n, v 'bɑ:bɪk.ju: 26  
basic 'beɪsɪk 34  
basket 'bɑ:skɪt 24  
bass guitar beɪs grɪ'tu: 45  
bass guitarist beɪs grɪ'tu:ɪst 45  
bath bɑ:θ 16  
battle 'bætəl 58  
BBC 'bi:bi:'si: 100  
be (just) about to bi: ə'baʊt tu: 75  
be delayed bi: dɪ'leɪd 64  
be dying for sth bi: 'daɪɪŋ fɔ: 'sʌmθɪŋ 95  
be held up bi: held ʌp 64  
be in touch bi: ɪn tʌtʃ 99  
be into sth [like sth] bi: 'ɪntə 'sʌmθɪŋ 67  
beach bi:tʃ 50  
beans bi:nz 25  
bear beə 8  
beat bi:t 43  
beauty 'bju:ti 10  
because bɪ'kɔ:z 94  
because of bɪ'kɔ:z ɒv 94  
bee bi: 8  
beef bi:f 25  
before [place] bɪ'fɔ: 90  
before [time] bɪ'fɔ: 92  
behave bɪ'heɪv 3  
behaviour bɪ'heɪvjə 86  
belief bɪ'li:f 56  
believe [think] bɪ'li:v 97  
believe in bɪ'li:v ɪn 56  
bell bel 62  
belong to bɪ'lɒŋ tu: 77  
below bɪ'ləʊ 90  
bend n, v bend 30  
beneath bɪ'ni:θ 90  
beside [next to] bɪ'saɪd 90  
besides [giving another reason] bɪ'saɪdz 92  
besides [in addition] bɪ'saɪd 93  
best friend best frend 13  
best wishes best 'wɪʃɪz 99  
beyond bɪ'jɒnd 90  
bicycle 'baɪsɪkəl 29  
bike baɪk 29, 100  
billion 'bɪljən 60  
bin bɪn 39, 86  
biography baɪ'ɒgrəfi 44  
birth bɜ:θ 14  
birthday card 'bɜ:θdeɪ kɑ:d 73  
(a) bit of sth bɪt ɒv 'sʌmθɪŋ 86  
bitter 'bɪtə 26  
blame sb for sth bleɪm 'sʌmbɒdi fɔ: 'sʌmθɪŋ 87  
blanket 'blæŋkɪt 18  
bleed bli:d 21  
bless you bles ju: 68  
blind blaɪnd 84  
blinds blaɪndz 18  
block of flats blɒk ɒv flæts 17  
blog blɒɡ 54  
blogger 'blɒŋə 54  
bloke bləʊk 95  
blonde blɒnd 10  
blow v bləʊ 7  
blow your nose bləʊ jɔ: nəʊz 9  
board n, v bɔ:d 47  
board [blackboard] n bɔ:d 100  
boarding card 'bɔ:ɪŋ kɑ:d 47  
boil bɔɪl 26  
boiling 'bɔɪlɪŋ 7  
bomb bɒm 58  
bone bəʊn 62  
book v bʊk 48  
boots bu:tɪz 22  
bored bɔ:d 89  
boring 'bɔ:ɪŋ 89  
borrow 'bɒrəʊ 32  
both sides of an argument bəʊθ saɪdz ɒv æn 'ɑ:ɡjʊmənt 97  
bother 'bɒðə 16  
bottle 'bɒtəl 63  
bottom 'bɒtəm 9  
bowl bəʊl 63  
box bɒks 63  
boxing 'bɒksɪŋ 42  
bracelet 'breɪslət 22  
brake n, v breɪk 30, 72  
branch (of a company) brɑ:ntʃ 40  
branch (of a tree) brɑ:ntʃ 28  
Brazil brə'zɪl 5  
Brazilian brə'zɪliən 5  
break [rest] n breɪk 33  
break a record breɪk ə'rekɔ:d 43  
break down breɪk daʊn 39, 80  
break in (to sth) breɪk ɪn 55, 80  
break the rules breɪk ðə ru:lz 33  
break up [end a relationship] breɪk ʌp 15  
break up [end of term] breɪk ʌp 33  
breast brest 9  
breathe (in/out) bri:ð 9  
breeze bri:z 50  
brick brɪk 36  
bride braɪd 15  
(bride)groom grʊ:m 15  
bridge brɪdʒ 30  
briefly 'bri:fli 91  
bright braɪt 22  
bring sb luck brɪŋ 'sʌmbɒdi ʌk 46  
bring sb up brɪŋ 'sʌmbɒdi ʌp 14  
broad brɔ:d 10  
broadcast 'brɔ:dkɑ:st 51  
broccoli 'brɒkəli 25  
broken down 'brəʊkən daʊn 39  
browse braʊz 54  
browser 'braʊzə 54  
brush your teeth brʌʃ jɔ: ti:θ 16  
bucket 'bʌkɪt 62  
build bɪld 36  
builder 'bɪldə 36  
bull bʊl 8  
bunch bʌntʃ 25, 63  
burglar 'bɜ:glə 55  
burglary 'bɜ:gləri 55  
burn v bɜ:n 19  
burst into tears bɜ:st 'ɪntə tɪəz 75  
bus bʌs 29  
bus driver bʌs 'draɪvə 73  
bus station bʌs 'steɪʃən 73  
bus stop bʌs stɒp 29, 73  
business studies 'bɪznɪs 'stʌdɪz 35  
businessman/woman 'bɪznɪsmæn/'wʊmən 35  
butterfly 'bʌtəflaɪ 8  
button 'bʌtən 22  
by [how much] baɪ 41  
by [near] baɪ 90  
by [next to] baɪ 90  
by [not later than] baɪ 59  
by accident baɪ 'æksɪdənt 78

- by chance baɪ tʃɑːns 78  
 by hand baɪ hænd 78  
 by mistake baɪ mɪ'steɪk 78  
 by the way baɪ ðə weɪ 75  
 cabbage 'kæbɪdʒ 25  
 cabin crew 'kæbɪn kruː 47  
 cage keɪdʒ 8  
 calculate 'kælkjəleɪt 60  
 calculation ,kælkjə'leɪʃən 60  
 calculator 'kælkjəleɪtə 39, 60  
 calendar 'kælɪndə 39  
 calf kɑːf 25  
 call [describe sb] kɔːl 33  
 call [phone] kɔːl 52  
 call for sb kɔːl fɔː 'sʌmbɒdi 80  
 calm (person) kɑːm 11  
 calm (sea) kɑːm 50  
 camel 'kæməl 8  
 camping 'kæmpɪŋ 42  
 campsite 'kæmpsaɪt 73  
 can (of cola) kæn 63  
 can't help it kɑːnt help ɪt 76  
 can't stand kɑːnt stænd 67  
 canal kə'næl 6  
 cancel 'kænsəl 64  
 cancer 'kænsə 21  
 candidate 'kændɪdət 34  
 Cantonese ,kæntə'niːz 5  
 cap kæp 22  
 capital [city] 'kæpɪtəl 5  
 capital letter 'kæpɪtəl 'letə 4  
 captain 'kæptɪn 43  
 car park kɑː pɑːk 27  
 cardinal number 'kɑːdɪnəl  
   'nʌmbə 60  
 care keə 56  
 career aim kə'riəreɪm 96  
 careful 'keəfəl 71  
 careless 'keələs 71  
 Caribbean ,kæri'biːən 5  
 caring 'keərɪŋ 12  
 carpenter 'kɑːpɪntə 36  
 carpet 'kɑːpɪt 18  
 carrot 'kærət 25  
 carry guns 'kæri ɡʌnz 58  
 carry on (with sth) 'kæri ɒn 79  
 carton 'kɑːtən 63  
 case keɪs 100  
 cash kæʃ 20  
 cashpoint 'kæʃpɔɪnt 20, 73  
 castle 'kɑːsəl 49  
 casual 'kæʒjuəl 22  
 catch (a bus/train) kætʃ 29  
 catch (a criminal) kætʃ 55  
 cathedral kə'θiːdrəl 49  
 cause kɔːz 97  
 cave keɪv 6  
 CD player ,sɪ'diː 'pleɪə 32  
 celebrate 'seləbreɪt 15, 46  
 celebration ,selə'breɪʃən 15  
 celebrity sə'lebrətɪ 51  
 cellist 'tʃelɪst 45  
 cello 'tʃeləʊ 45  
 central heating 'sentərəl 'hiːtɪŋ  
   17  
 century 'sentʃəri 44, 59  
 cereal 'sɪəriəl 16  
 ceremony 'serɪməni 15  
 certificate sə'tɪfɪkət 3, 35  
 champion 'tʃæmpɪən 43  
 championship 'tʃæmpɪənʃɪp  
   43  
 chance [opportunity] tʃɑːns  
   86  
 chance [possibility that sth will  
   happen] tʃɑːns 86  
 change into sth tʃeɪndʒ 'ɪntə  
   'sʌmθɪŋ 22  
 change your mind tʃeɪndʒ jɔː  
   maɪnd 76  
 changing room 'tʃeɪndʒɪŋ ru:m  
   23  
 channel [TV] 'tʃænəl 51  
 character [good qualities]  
   'kærəktə 17  
 character [personality] 'kærəktə  
   11  
 charge v tʃɑːdʒ 20, 41  
 charming 'tʃɑːmɪŋ 17  
 chat n, v tʃæt 16, 72  
 chat show tʃæt ʃəʊ 51  
 check [examine] tʃek 20, 47  
 check out tʃek aʊt 48  
 checkout [online  
   shopping] 'tʃek aʊt 54  
 checkout [supermarket]  
   'tʃek aʊt 24  
 check your email tʃek jɔːr  
   'iːmeɪl 54  
 check-in (desk) 'tʃekɪn 47  
 cheek tʃiːk 9, 68  
 cheerful 'tʃiːəfəl 12  
 cheers [a toast] tʃiːəz 68  
 cheers [goodbye] tʃiːəz 68  
 cheers [thanks] tʃiːəz 64, 95  
 chef ʃef 26  
 chest tʃest 9  
 chest of drawers tʃest ɒv drɔːz  
   73  
 childhood 'tʃaɪldhʊd 14  
 chilly 'tʃɪli 7  
 chin tʃɪn 9  
 China 'tʃaɪnə 5  
 Chinese tʃaɪ'niːz 5  
 choice tʃɔɪs 18  
 chop tʃɒp 26  
 circle 'sɜːkəl 62  
 classical music 'klæsɪkəl  
   'mjuːzɪk 45  
 clean kliːn 1, 27  
 clean your teeth kliːn jɔː tiːθ  
   16  
 cleaner 'kliːnə 16  
 clear (sky) klɪə 7  
 clear sth up klɪə 'sʌmθɪŋ ʌp 19  
 clever 'klevə 11  
 click on (a link) klɪk ɒn 54  
 client 'klaɪənt 40  
 cliff klɪf 50  
 climate 'klaɪmət 6  
 climate change 'klaɪmət tʃeɪndʒ  
   57  
 close family kləʊs 'fæməli 13  
 clothes kləʊðz 23  
 cloud klaʊd 7  
 cloudy 'klaʊdi 7  
 coach kəʊtʃ 29  
 coast kəʊst 50  
 coconut 'kəʊkənət 25  
 coin kɔɪn 20  
 cold kəʊld 7  
 collar 'kɒlə 22  
 colleague 'kɒliːg 39  
 colourful 'kɒləfəl 71  
 comb your hair kəʊm jɔː heə 9  
 come out [be available] kʌm  
   aʊt 45, 51  
 come out [sun] kʌm aʊt 7  
 come round [visit] kʌm  
   raʊnd 16  
 comedy 'kɒmədi 44  
 comfortable 'kʌmfətəbəl 71  
 comma 'kɒmə 4  
 commence kə'mens 95  
 commit a crime kə'mɪt ə kraɪm  
   55  
 compare kəm'peə 97  
 compared with/to kəm'peəd wɪð/  
   tuː 97  
 comparison kəm'pærɪsən 97  
 competition ,kɒmpə'tɪʃən 43  
 complain kəm'pleɪn 29, 37, 77  
 complaint kəm'pleɪnt 29, 37  
 completely kəm'pliːtli 91  
 complicated 'kɒmplɪkeɪtɪd  
   44, 96  
 composer kəm'pəʊzə 45  
 concentrate 'kɒnsəntreɪt 77  
 conditions kən'dɪʃənz 37  
 conductor kən'dʌktə 45  
 confident 'kɒnfɪdənt 11  
 confirm kən'fɜːm 98  
 confused kən'fjuːzd 12, 89  
 confusing kən'fjuːzɪŋ 89  
 confusion kən'fjuːzən 12  
 congratulations  
   kən,grætʃu'leɪʃənz 68  
 conjunction kən'dʒʌŋkʃən 4  
 connect kə'nekt 54  
 connected to/with kə'nektɪd tuː/  
   wɪð 3  
 consequently 'kɒnseqwəntli  
   97  
 consider kən'sɪdə 87  
 consist of kən'sɪst ɒv 6, 46  
 consonant 'kɒnsənənt 34  
 constituency kən'stɪtjuːnsɪ 56  
 consultant kən'sʌltənt 37  
 contacts 'kɒntæktz 40  
 container kən'teɪnə 63  
 contents 'kɒntents 51, 63  
 continent 'kɒntɪnənt 5  
 contrast n 'kɒntrɑːst 6  
 contrast v 'kɒn'trɑːst 97  
 convenient kən'viːniənt 24, 29  
 convince kən'vɪns 88  
 cook n kʊk 26  
 cooker 'kʊkə 18, 26  
 cool kuːl 7  
 copy 'kɒpi 53  
 correct adj kə'rekt 69  
 correct v kə'rekt 32  
 cottage 'kɒtɪdʒ 17  
 cotton 'kɒtən 62  
 cough kɒf 21

- Could I speak to ...? kud ai spi:k tu: 52  
 (I) could not believe my eyes kud nɒt br'i:lv maɪ aɪz 76  
 Could you (possibly) ...? kud ju: 65  
 countable (noun) 'kauntəbəl 4  
 country of origin 'kʌntri ɒv 'brɪdʒɪn 96  
 countryside 'kʌntrɪsaɪd 28  
 couple [several] 'kʌpəl 15, 61, 63  
 courgette kə:'zet 25  
 course [sport] kɔ:s 42  
 course (of a meal) kɔ:s 48  
 court (of law) kɔ:t 55  
 court [sport] kɔ:t 42  
 cousin 'kʌzən 13  
 cover v 'kʌvə 6  
 crab kræb 25  
 crash [computer] kræʃ 53  
 crash into sth kræʃ 'ɪntə 'sʌmθɪŋ 30  
 create kri'eɪt 53, 57  
 creative kri'eɪtɪv 11, 12  
 creature 'kri:tʃə 8  
 credit card 'kredɪt kɑ:d 73  
 crime kraɪm 55  
 crime rate kraɪm reɪt 27  
 criminal 'krɪmɪnəl 55  
 crop krɒp 28  
 crossroads 'krɒsrəʊdz 73  
 crowded 'kraʊdɪd 27  
 cry kraɪ 9  
 cucumber 'kju:kʌmbə 25  
 cultural 'kʌltʃərəl 27, 71  
 culture 'kʌltʃə 27  
 cup [sport] kʌp 3  
 cupboard 'kʌbəd 18  
 cure n, v kjuə 72  
 curiosity ,kjuəri'nsəti 12  
 curious 'kjuəriəs 12  
 curly 'kɜ:li 10  
 currency 'kʌrənsɪ 20  
 current 'kʌrənt 13  
 currently 'kʌrəntli 40  
 cushion 'kʊʃən 18  
 custom 'kʌstəm 46  
 customary 'kʌstəməri 46  
 customs 'kʌstəmz 47  
 cut [computer] v kʌt 53  
 cut [injure] v kʌt 21  
 cut [reduce] v kʌt 56  
 CV ,si:'vi: 38, 96, 100  
 cycle 'saɪkəl 29  
 cyclist 'saɪklɪst 29  
 daily 'deɪli 1, 40, 51  
 damage n, v 'dæmɪdʒ 30  
 dangerous 'deɪndʒərəs 27  
 dancer 'dɑ:ntsə 70  
 dark dɑ:k 17  
 dark (hair) dɑ:k 10  
 date [day] deɪt 2  
 date [romantic meeting] deɪt 15  
 date of arrival/departure deɪt ɒv ə'raɪvəl/dɪ'pɑ:tʃə 96  
 date of birth deɪt ɒv bɜ:θ 96  
 day after day deɪ 'ɑ:ftə deɪ 75  
 day-to-day ,deɪtə'deɪ 37  
 dead ded 1, 14, 58  
 deaf def 84  
 deal with di:l wɪð 37  
 Dear Sir/Madam dɪə sɜ:/ 'mædəm 98  
 death deθ 58  
 decade 'dekeɪd 59  
 decimal 'desɪməl 60  
 decrease n 'di:kri:s 41  
 decrease v di:'kri:s 41  
 defeat n, v dɪ'fi:t 43  
 defend dɪ'fend 58  
 definite article 'defɪnət 'ɑ:tɪkəl 4  
 definition ,defɪ'nɪʃən 3  
 degree [amount] dɪ'gri: 91  
 degree [university] dɪ'gri: 35  
 degree(s) [temperature] dɪ'gri: 6, 7  
 delay dɪ'leɪ 47, 64, 98  
 delete dɪ'li:t 54  
 delicious dɪ'lɪʃəs 26, 89  
 delighted dɪ'laɪtɪd 89  
 deliver dɪ'lɪvə 40  
 demand n dɪ'mɑ:nd 40  
 demand v dɪ'mɑ:nd 87  
 dentist 'dentɪst 36  
 depart dɪ'pɑ:t 95  
 departure dɪ'pɑ:tʃə 47  
 departures board dɪ'pɑ:tʃəz bɔ:d 47  
 depend (on sth) [not sure about sth] dɪ'pend 74, 77  
 depend on sb [need sb to support you] dɪ'pend ɒn 'sʌmbɒdi 77  
 deposit dɪ'pɒzɪt 20  
 depressed dɪ'prest 12, 89  
 depressing dɪ'presɪŋ 89  
 depth depθ 61  
 design dɪ'zɑɪn 36  
 designer label dɪ'zɑɪnə 'leɪbəl 23  
 despite dɪ'spaɪt 93  
 dessert dɪ'zɜ:t 48  
 destination ,destɪ'neɪʃən 47  
 destroy dɪ'strɔɪ 57, 58  
 details 'di:teɪlz 98  
 detective dɪ'tektɪv 55  
 develop dɪ'veləp 70  
 development dɪ'veləpmənt 70  
 dial 'daɪəl 52  
 dialling code 'daɪəlɪŋ kəʊd 52  
 diary 'daɪəri 39  
 die daɪ 58  
 diet [lose weight] n, v 'daɪət 72  
 different from 'dɪfərənt frɒm 77  
 direct (a film) dɪ'rekt 44  
 direct sb dɪ'rekt 'sʌmbɒdi 30  
 directing dɪ'rektɪŋ 44  
 director (of a company) dɪ'rektə 70  
 director (of a film) dɪ'rektə 44  
 dirty 'dɜ:ti 1, 27  
 disadvantage ,dɪsəd'vɑ:ntɪdʒ 27  
 disagree ,dɪsə'gri: 66, 69  
 disappear ,dɪsə'pɪə 69  
 disappointed ,dɪsə'pɔɪntɪd 12, 89  
 disappointing ,dɪsə'pɔɪntɪŋ 89  
 disappointment ,dɪsə'pɔɪntmənt 12  
 disc jockey (DJ) dɪsk 'dʒɒki 73  
 discuss dɪ'skʌs 70  
 discussion dɪ'skʌʃən 70  
 disease dɪ'zi:z 21  
 dishonest dɪ'sɒnɪst 11, 69  
 dislike n, v dɪ'slaɪk 67  
 display dɪ'spleɪ 46  
 distance 'dɪstəns 6, 61  
 disturb dɪ'stɜ:b 31  
 dive n, v daɪv 72  
 divide [maths] dɪ'vaɪd 60  
 divide [separate] dɪ'vaɪd 33  
 diving 'daɪvɪŋ 50  
 division dɪ'vɪʒən 60  
 divorce dɪ'vɔ:s 15  
 DJ (disc jockey) ,dɪ:'dʒeɪ 73  
 do [study] du: 33  
 do a bit/lot of (sightseeing/hiking etc.) du: ə bɪt/lɒt ɒv 42, 49  
 do a course du: ə kɔ:s 81  
 do an Internet search du: æn 'ɪntənət sɜ:tʃ 54  
 do exercise du: 'eksəsaɪz 42, 81  
 do homework du: 'həʊmwɜ:k 81  
 do housework du: 'həʊswɜ:k 16, 81  
 do not leave bags unattended du: nɒt li:v bægz ,ʌnə'tendɪd 31  
 do research du: rɪ'sɜ:tʃ 35  
 do something/nothing du: 'sʌmθɪŋ 'nʌθɪŋ 81  
 do sth up du: 'sʌmθɪŋ ʌp 22  
 do the shopping du: ðə 'ʃɒpɪŋ 16  
 do the washing/ironing (etc.) du: ðə 'wɒʃɪŋ/'aɪəɪnɪŋ 16  
 do well du: wel 34  
 do your best du: jɔ: best 34, 81  
 do your hair/make-up du: jɔ: heə/meɪk ʌp 81  
 do/work overtime du:wɜ:k 'əʊvətaɪm 37  
 do/write an essay du:/raɪt æn 'eseɪ 34  
 document 'dɒkjəmənt 53  
 documentary ,dɒkjə'mentəri 51  
 dolphin 'dɒlfɪn 8  
 don't worry dəʊnt 'wʌrɪ 64  
 donkey 'dɒŋki 8  
 dot (in an email address) dɒt 54  
 double (double four nine) 'dʌbəl 60  
 double room 'dʌbəl ru:m 48  
 double-click ,dʌbəl'klɪk 53  
 down [further along] daʊn 61  
 down [to a lower place] daʊn 90

download 'daʊn'ləʊd 45, 54  
 downstairs 'daʊn'steəz 17  
 dozen 'dɒzən 63  
 Dr 'drɒktə 100  
 draw (a game) n, v drɔ: 43  
 draw (pictures) drɔ: 2  
 dreadful 'dredfəl 89  
 dream n, v dri:m 72  
 dress v dres 23, 33  
 dress in dres in 23  
 dress up dres ʌp 46  
 drop v drɒp 19  
 drop (of milk) drɒp 63  
 drought draʊt 57  
 drummer 'drʌmə 45  
 drums drʌmz 45  
 due to dju: tu: 94  
 dull dʌl 27  
 during 'djʊərɪŋ 59  
 duty free 'dju:ti fri: 47  
 duvet 'du:vet 18  
 e.g. i:'dʒi: 100  
 early (20s/30s, etc.) 'ɜ:li 14  
 earn ɜ:n 20, 37  
 earrings 'ɛərɪŋz 22, 73  
 east i:st 6  
 Earth [planet] ɜ:θ 6  
 eat in/out i:t in aʊt 16  
 economics ,i:kə'nɒmɪks 35  
 economist i'kɒnəmɪst 35, 70  
 economy i'kɒnəmi 41  
 effect i'fekt 12, 57, 97  
 efficient i'fɪʃənt 57  
 Egypt 'i:dʒɪpt 5  
 Egyptian i'dʒɪptʃən 5  
 elbow 'elbəʊ 9  
 elder 'eldə 13  
 elderly 'eldəli 14, 56  
 elect i'lekt 56  
 election i'lektʃən 56  
 electrical i'lektɪkəl 71  
 electrician ,ɪlek'trɪʃən 36  
 elephant 'elɪfənt 8  
 embarrassed ɪm'bærəst 89  
 embarrassing ɪm'bærəsɪŋ 89  
 emergency i'mɜ:dʒənsi 52  
 emergency services i'mɜ:dʒənsi  
 'sɜ:vɪsɪz 36  
 emotion i'məʊʃən 12  
 emotional i'məʊʃənəl 12  
 emphasise 'emfəsaɪz 3  
 employ sb ɪm'plɔɪ 'sʌmbɒdi 38  
 employee ɪm'plɔɪi: 40  
 en suite ,ɒn'swi:t 18  
 enclose ɪn'kləʊz 98  
 encourage ɪn'kʌrɪdʒ 88  
 endangered animals  
 ɪn'deɪndʒəd 'æniməlz 8  
 end up ɛnd ʌp 30  
 enemy 'enəmi 58  
 energetic ,enə'dʒetɪk 12  
 energy 'enədʒi 57  
 engaged [busy] ɪn'geɪdʒd 52  
 engagement ɪn'geɪdʒmənt 15  
 engineer ,endʒɪ'nɪə 36  
 engineering ,endʒɪ'nɪərɪŋ 35  
 English 'ɪŋɡlɪʃ 5  
 enjoy (+ -ing) ɪn'dʒɔɪ 87

enjoyable ɪn'dʒɔɪəbəl 71  
 enormous i'noʊməs 61, 89  
 enquire about sth ɪn'kwaɪə  
 ə'baʊt 'sʌmθɪŋ 98  
 enrolment form ɪn'rəʊlmənt  
 fɔ:m 96  
 enter (a password) 'entə 53  
 entertain ,entə'teɪn 44  
 entertainer ,entə'teɪnə 44  
 entertainment ,entə'teɪnmənt  
 44  
 entrance 'entrəns 24  
 entry form 'entri fɔ:m 96  
 environment ɪn'vaɪrənmənt 57  
 e-paper i:'peɪpə 51  
 equal adj 'i:kwəl 56  
 equals v 'i:kwəlz 60  
 equipment i'kwɪpmənt 86  
 escape i'skeɪp 55  
 essay 'eseɪ 35  
 essential i'senʃəl 54, 89  
 etc. et 'setərə 100  
 EU ,i:'ju: 100  
 Europe 'jʊərəp 5  
 even though 'i:vən ðəʊ 93  
 eventually i'ventʃuəli 92  
 ever since 'evə sɪns 13  
 exam ɪg'zæm 100  
 except for ɪk'sept fɔ: 75  
 excess baggage ɪk'ses  
 'bæɡɪdʒ 47  
 excessive ɪk'sesɪv 57  
 excuse n ɪk'skju:s 64  
 excuse me [attract  
 attention] ɪk'skju:z mi: 68  
 excuse me [say sorry] ɪk'skju:z  
 mi: 64  
 ex-girlfriend/wife (etc.) eks  
 'gɜ:lfrɛnd/waɪf 13  
 exhausted ɪg'zɔ:stɪd 27, 89  
 exist ɪg'zɪst 57  
 existence ɪg'zɪstəns 57  
 existing ɪg'zɪstɪŋ 53  
 exit (stop using an application)  
 v ɪk'sɪt 53  
 expand ɪk'spænd 40  
 expect ɪk'spekt 88  
 expecting a baby ɪk'spektɪŋ ə  
 'beɪbi 74  
 experience [knowledge]  
 ɪk'spɪəriəns 38, 86  
 experience [sth that happens to  
 you] ɪk'spɪəriəns 86  
 experiment v ɪk'sperɪmənt  
 34  
 expert 'ekspɜ:t 40  
 explain ɪk'spleɪn 32  
 explain the difference between X  
 and Y ɪk'spleɪn ðə 'dɪfərəns  
 bɪ'twi:n eks ænd waɪ 32  
 explanation ,eksplə'neɪʃən  
 2, 32  
 explode ɪk'spləʊd 58  
 explore ɪk'splɔ: 49  
 extremely ɪk'stri:mli 7, 91  
 facilities fə'sɪlətɪz 48  
 fail (an exam) v feɪl 34  
 fair [equal] feə 56

fair [hair] feə 10  
 fairly 'feəli 91  
 fall n, v fɔ:l 41  
 fall asleep fɔ:l ə'sli:p 16  
 fall in love fɔ:l ɪn lʌv 74  
 fall over fɔ:l ə'ʊvə 19, 79  
 famous feɪməs 71  
 fancy (doing) sth 'fænsi 'sʌmθɪŋ  
 44, 65, 99  
 FAQs ,efə'kju:z 53  
 Far East ,fɑ:r 'i:st 5  
 fare feə 29  
 farewell ,feə'wel 68  
 farmhouse 'fɑ:mhaʊs 28  
 farming 'fɑ:mɪŋ 28  
 fascinating 'fæsɪneɪtɪŋ 89  
 fashionable 'fæʃənəbəl 71  
 fast asleep fɔ:st ə'sli:p 74  
 fasten 'fɑ:sən 47  
 fear n fiə 41  
 fee(s) fi: 20  
 feed fi:d 16, 31  
 feel [believe] fi:l 66  
 feel [experience] n, v fi:l 85  
 feel bad about sth fi:l bæd ə'baʊt  
 'sʌmθɪŋ 76  
 feel sick fi:l sɪk 21  
 feelings 'fi:lɪŋz 12  
 feet [measurement] fi:t 61  
 female 'fi:meɪl 33, 68  
 fence fens 28  
 festival 'festɪvəl 46  
 fiction 'fɪkʃən 44  
 field fi:ld 28  
 fifty-pence piece 'fɪfti pens pi:s  
 20  
 fight faɪt 58  
 figures (number) 'fɪɡəz 41  
 file (computer) faɪl 53  
 file menu faɪl 'menju: 53  
 files faɪlz 39  
 filing cabinet 'faɪlɪŋ 'kæbɪnət  
 39  
 fill sth in fɪl 'sʌmθɪŋ ɪn 96  
 film director fɪlm dɪ'rektə 44  
 film-maker fɪlm 'meɪkə 73  
 filthy 'fɪlθi 1  
 final n 'faɪnəl 43  
 finally 'faɪnəli 92  
 find out faɪnd aʊt 79  
 fine n faɪn 55  
 fire brigade faɪə brɪ'geɪd 36  
 fireman/firefighter 'faɪəmən  
 'faɪəfaɪtə 36  
 fireworks 'faɪəwɜ:ks 46  
 firm adj fɜ:m 18  
 firm n fɜ:m 40  
 first language fɜ:st 'læŋɡwɪdʒ  
 5  
 first of all fɜ:st ɒv ɔ:l 92  
 first(ly) fɜ:st 92  
 fit adj fɪt 70  
 fit v fɪt 23  
 fitness 'fɪtnəs 70  
 fix fɪks 36  
 fixed (hours) fɪkst 37  
 flag flæg 62  
 flat n flæt 17

flautist 'flaʊtɪst 45  
 flavour 'fleɪvə 26  
 flight flait 29  
 flight number flait 'nʌmbə 47  
 flood flʌd 57  
 floor flɔː 18  
 flu fluː 21, 100  
 fluent 'fluːənt 34  
 flute fluːt 45  
 fly n flai 8  
 fly v flai 29  
 fog fɒg 7  
 foggy 'fɒgi 7  
 fold your arms fəʊld ʤɔːr ɑːmz 9  
 folk music fəʊk 'mjuːzɪk 45  
 footballer 'fʊtbɔːlə 70  
 footpath 'fʊtpɑːθ 28  
 for fɔː 59  
 for a start fɔːr ə stɑːt 92  
 for ages fɔːr 'eɪdʒɪz 59  
 for example fɔːr ɪg'zɑːmpəl 100  
 for fun fɔː fʌn 42  
 for instance fɔːr ɪnstəns 75  
 for one thing fɔː wʌn θɪŋ 92  
 for pleasure fɔː 'pleʒə 42  
 for the time being fɔː ðə taɪm 'biːɪŋ 59  
 forehead 'fɔːhed 9  
 forget fə'get 2, 19  
 former 'fɔːmə 40  
 fortnight 'fɔːtnaɪt 59  
 fortunately 'fɔːtʃənətli 16  
 forum 'fɔːrəm 51  
 fossil fuel 'fɒsəl 'fjuːəl 57  
 fountain 'faʊntɪn 49  
 fraction 'frækʃən 60  
 fragile 'frædʒaɪl 31  
 France frɑːns 5  
 freezing 'friːzɪŋ 7  
 French frenʃ 5  
 frequency 'friːkwəntsi 91  
 frequently 'friːkwəntli 91  
 fresh freʃ 24  
 fresh air freʃ eə 28  
 fridge frɪdʒ 100  
 fridge/freezer frɪdʒ 'friːzə 18  
 friendly 'frendli 11  
 friendship 'frendʃɪp 13  
 frightened 'fraɪtənd 12  
 frog frɒg 8  
 fry fraɪ 26  
 frying pan 'fraɪɪŋ pæn 26  
 full stop fʊl stɒp 4, 73  
 full-time 'fʊl'taɪm 38  
 fully-booked 'fʊli bukt 48  
 fur fɜː 62  
 furniture 'fɜːnɪtʃə 86  
 garlic 'gɑːlɪk 25  
 gate geɪt 28  
 gate (3/5/10, etc.) (airport) geɪt 47  
 gather 'gæðə 46  
 general election 'dʒenərəl ɪ'lektʃən 56  
 generalisation 'dʒenərələɪ'zeɪʃən 97  
 generation ,dʒenə'reɪʃən 40  
 generous 'dʒenərəs 11

German 'dʒɜːmən 5  
 Germany 'dʒɜːməni 5  
 get [answer] get 83  
 get [arrive] get 83  
 get [become] get 83  
 get [do a task] get 83  
 get [fetch] get 83  
 get a job get ə dʒɒb 33  
 get away [escape] get ə'wei 55, 58  
 get better get 'betə 83  
 get divorced get dɪ'vɔːst 15  
 get dressed get drest 22, 69  
 get engaged get ɪn'geɪdʒd 15  
 get in [arrive] get ɪn 80, 83  
 get in [enter] get ɪn 29, 83  
 get in touch get ɪn tʌtʃ 83  
 get into trouble get ɪntə'trʌbəl 33  
 get lost get lɒst 30, 49  
 get married to sb get 'mæriəd tuː 'sʌmbəndi 13, 15  
 get off (a bus) get ɒf 29  
 get on (a bus) get ɒn 29  
 get on (with sb) get ɒn 13, 79  
 get out [leave] get aʊt 29, 83  
 get over sth get əʊvə 'sʌmθɪŋ 80  
 get rid of sth get rɪd ɒv 'sʌmθɪŋ 75, 83  
 get sth back get 'sʌmθɪŋ bæk 83  
 get sth done get 'sʌmθɪŋ dʌn 83  
 get sth wrong get 'sʌmθɪŋ rɒŋ 34, 83  
 get stuck get stʌk 27, 60  
 get through [make contact] get θruː 52  
 get through sth [finish] get θruː 'sʌmθɪŋ 34  
 get to know sb get tuː nəʊ 'sʌmbəndi 13, 15, 83  
 get to sleep get tuː sliːp 83  
 get together get tə'geðə 83, 99  
 get undressed get ʌn'drest 69  
 get up get ʌp 16  
 get used to sth get juːst tuː 'sʌmθɪŋ 67  
 get worse get wɜːs 19, 83  
 giant 'dʒaɪənt 61  
 giraffe dʒɪ'rɑːf 8  
 give [cause an effect] ɪv 82  
 give a speech/lecture (etc.) ɪv ə spiːtʃ/'lektʃə 82  
 give my regards/love to ... ɪv maɪ rɪ'gɑːdz/lʌv tuː 99  
 give sb advice ɪv 'sʌmbəndi əd'vaɪs 37  
 give sb a hand ɪv 'sʌmbəndi ə hænd 82  
 give sb a hug ɪv 'sʌmbəndi ə hʌg 82  
 give sb a kiss ɪv 'sʌmbəndi ə kɪs 72  
 give sb a ring ɪv 'sʌmbəndi ə rɪŋ 52, 72, 82  
 give sb a shock ɪv 'sʌmbəndi ə ʃɒk 82  
 give sb the sack ɪv 'sʌmbəndi ðə sæk 38

give sth away ɪv 'sʌmθɪŋ ə'wei 79  
 give sth a push ɪv 'sʌmθɪŋ ə pʊʃ 82  
 give up (sth) [stop doing an activity] ɪv ʌp 43, 79  
 give up sth [leave a job] ɪv ʌp 'sʌmθɪŋ 15  
 global warming 'glɔːbəl 'wɔːmɪŋ 57  
 go [disappear] ɡəʊ 84  
 go [lead somewhere] ɡəʊ 84  
 go (out) for a walk/drive (etc.) ɡəʊ fɔːr ə wɔːk/draɪv 84  
 go (swimming/shopping, etc.) ɡəʊ 16, 42, 84  
 go and get [fetch] ɡəʊ ænd get 83, 84  
 go away [go on holiday] ɡəʊ ə'wei 79, 84  
 go away [leave] ɡəʊ ə'wei 79  
 go back ɡəʊ bæk 79, 84  
 go by bike/car (etc.) ɡəʊ baɪ/bɑːk kɑː 29  
 go down ɡəʊ daʊn 41  
 go for [choose] ɡəʊ fɔː 84  
 go for (a swim/drive, etc.) ɡəʊ fɔː 50, 84  
 go grey/bald/deaf (etc.) ɡəʊ greɪ/ bɔːld/def 84  
 go into business ɡəʊ ɪntə'bɪznɪs 35  
 go mad [become angry] ɡəʊ məd 84  
 go off [electricity] ɡəʊ ɒf 79  
 go off [explode] ɡəʊ ɒf 79  
 go off [go bad] ɡəʊ ɒf 79  
 go off [ring] ɡəʊ ɒf 79  
 go on [happen] ɡəʊ ɒn 27, 84  
 go on (to do sth) ɡəʊ ɒn 33, 35  
 go on a diet ɡəʊ ɒn ə 'daɪət 72, 74  
 go online ɡəʊ ɒn'laɪn 54  
 go out [social activity] ɡəʊ aʊt 16, 49  
 go out [stop working] ɡəʊ aʊt 84  
 go out with sb ɡəʊ aʊt wɪð 'sʌmbəndi 15  
 go sightseeing ɡəʊ 'saɪtsiːɪŋ 49  
 go through ɡəʊ θruː 47  
 go to bed ɡəʊ tuː bed 16  
 go to sleep ɡəʊ tuː sliːp 16  
 go up ɡəʊ ʌp 41  
 go well/badly ɡəʊ wel/'bædli 84  
 go with sth ɡəʊ wɪð 'sʌmθɪŋ 23  
 go wrong ɡəʊ rɒŋ 15, 84  
 goalkeeper 'ɡəʊl,kiːpə 42  
 goat ɡəʊt 8  
 golf course ɡɒlf kɔːrs 42  
 good luck ɡʊd lʌk 68  
 good/bad at sth ɡʊd/bæd æt 'sʌmθɪŋ 26, 77  
 good-looking ɡʊd'lʊkɪŋ 10  
 gorgeous 'ɡɔːdʒəs 10  
 govern 'ɡʌvən 70

- government 'gʌvənmənt 56, 70  
 GP 'dʒi:'pi: 36  
 grade greɪd 34, 35  
 gradual(ly) 'grædʒʊəl 41  
 graduate n 'grædʒʊət 35, 98  
 grant [allow] grɑ:nt 95  
 grapes greɪps 25  
 grass grɑ:s 28  
 great greɪt 95  
 great fun greɪt fʌn 74  
 great importance greɪt ɪm'pɔ:tənts 74  
 Greece gri:s 5  
 Greek gri:k 5  
 greenhouse effect 'gri:nhaʊs rɪ'fekt 57  
 greenhouse gases 'gri:nhaʊs 'gæsɪz 57  
 greet gri:t 68  
 greeting 'gri:tɪŋ 68  
 grey greɪ 62  
 grill n, v grɪl 26  
 ground graʊnd 28  
 growing 'grəʊɪŋ 40, 41  
 guess n, v ges 3, 72  
 guidebook 'gaɪdbʊk 49  
 guilty 'gɪlti 55  
 guitar gi'tɑ: 45  
 guitarist gi'tɑ:rɪst 45  
 gun ɡʌn 36, 58  
 gym dʒɪm 42, 100  
 haggle 'hægl̩ 24  
 haircut 'heəkʌt 73  
 hairdresser 'heə,dresə 73  
 hairdryer 'heə,draɪə 73  
 half ha:f 60  
 half a dozen ha:f ə 'dʌzən 63  
 hand luggage hænd 'lʌgɪdʒ 47  
 hand sth out hænd 'sʌmθɪŋ aʊt 80  
 handle v 'hændəl 37  
 handsome 'hænsəm 10  
 handwriting 'hænd,raɪtɪŋ 96  
 hang around hæŋ ə'raʊnd 80  
 happiness 'hæpməs 70  
 harbour 'hɑ:bə 46  
 hard drive/disk hɑ:d draɪv/dɪsk 53  
 hard work hɑ:d wɜ:k 34  
 hardly ever 'hɑ:dli 'evə 91  
 hard-working ,hɑ:d'wɜ:kɪŋ 11  
 hate heɪt 67, 87  
 have a (swim/drink, etc.) hæv ə 50  
 have a good ear for language hæv ə ɡʊd ɪə fɔ: 'læŋgwɪdʒ 34  
 have a great/nice/terrible time hæv ə greɪt/nai:s/'terəbəl taɪm 49  
 have a look hæv ə lʊk 81  
 have a look round hæv ə lʊk raʊnd 49  
 have a wash/shower etc. hæv ə wɒʃ/ʃaʊə 16, 81  
 have a word with sb hæv ə wɜ:d wɪð 'sʌmbɒdi 76  
 have an early night hæv ən 'ɜ:li naɪt 16  
 have children hæv 'tʃɪldrən 74  
 have got sth on hæv ɡɒt 'sʌmθɪŋ ɒn 23  
 have no idea hæv nəʊ aɪ'dɪə 76  
 have something/nothing in common hæv 'sʌmθɪŋ/'nʌθɪŋ m 'kɒmən 67  
 have time for sth hæv taɪm fɔ: 'sʌmθɪŋ 59  
 headache 'hedeɪk 21  
 headline 'hedlɑ:m 51  
 headquarters ,hed'kwɔ:təz 40  
 hear hɪə 85  
 heart [in the body] hɑ:t 21  
 heart of somewhere hɑ:t ɒv 'sʌmwɛə 48, 58  
 heart attack hɑ:t ə'tæk 21  
 heat v hɪt 17  
 heavy (rain) 'hevi 7  
 heavy (traffic) 'hevi 74  
 Hebrew 'hi:brʊ: 5  
 heel hi:l 9  
 height haɪt 10, 61  
 held [organised] held 46  
 help help 88  
 helpful 'helpfəl 71  
 hen hen 25  
 hi haɪ 99  
 hide haɪd 58  
 high (mountain) haɪ 61  
 highlight 'haɪlaɪt 32  
 highlighter pen 'haɪ,laɪtə pen 1, 32  
 hill hɪl 28  
 hips hɪps 9  
 hire 'haɪə 20  
 historic monument hɪ'stɔ:rɪk 'mɒnjəmənt 49  
 hit hɪt 19, 55  
 hold an election həʊld ən rɪ'leɪʃən 56  
 hold on [wait] həʊld ɒn 80  
 hold-up həʊld ʌp 64  
 honest 'ɒnɪst 11, 69  
 honeymoon 'hʌnɪmu:n 15  
 hope that ... həʊp ðæt 88  
 hope to do sth həʊp tu: du: 'sʌmθɪŋ 87, 99  
 hopeful 'həʊpfəl 12  
 hopeless 'həʊpləs 19, 28  
 horrible 'hɒrəbəl 26  
 horror film 'hɒrə fɪlm 44  
 housework 'haʊswɜ:k 16  
 How about ...? [making a suggestion] həʊ ə'baʊt 65, 68  
 How about you? [asking sb sth] həʊ ə'baʊt ju: 68  
 How are things? həʊ ə: θɪŋz 68  
 How do you feel about ...? həʊ du: ju: fi:l ə'baʊt 66  
 How long/wide (etc.) is ...? həʊ lɒŋ/waɪd x ɪz 61  
 How's it going? həʊz ɪt 'gəʊɪŋ 68  
 however haʊ'evə 93, 97  
 hug hʌg 82  
 huge hju:dʒ 61, 89  
 humid 'hju:mɪd 7  
 hundred 'hʌndrəd 60  
 hurry (up) 'hʌrɪ 79  
 hurt v hɜ:t 21  
 I am pleased to inform you ... aɪ æm plɪzɪd tu: mɪ'fɔ:m ju: 98  
 I am writing in response to ... aɪ ,æm 'raɪtɪŋ m rɪ'spɒns tu: 98  
 I am writing to ... aɪ æm 'raɪtɪŋ tu: 98  
 I beg your pardon aɪ beg ʒɔ: 'pɔ:dən 64  
 I bet aɪ bet 95  
 I don't believe it aɪ dəʊnt brɪ'li:v ɪt 76  
 I don't fancy that aɪ dəʊnt 'fænsɪ ðæt 65  
 I don't mind aɪ dəʊnt maɪnd 65  
 I look forward to hearing from you aɪ lʊk 'fɔ:wəd tu: 'hɪəriŋ frɒm ju: 98  
 I must apologise for ... aɪ mʌst ə'pɒlədʒaɪz fɔ: 64  
 I regret to inform you ... aɪ rɪ'ɡret tu: mɪ'fɔ:m ju: 98  
 I see what you mean aɪ si: wɒt ju: mi:n 66  
 I suppose so aɪ sə'pəʊz səʊ 76  
 I was wondering if you could ... aɪ wɒz 'wʌndərɪŋ ɪf ju: kʊd 65  
 I wonder if you could ... aɪ 'wʌndər ɪf ju: kʊd 65  
 I would be grateful if you could ... aɪ wʊd bi: 'ɡreɪtful ɪf ju: kʊd 98  
 i.e. aɪ'i: 100  
 I'd rather ... aɪd 'rɑ:ðə 65  
 I'll have (chicken/fish, etc.) aɪl hæv 48  
 I'll leave it aɪl li:v ɪt 23  
 I'll take it aɪl teɪk ɪt 23  
 I'm afraid I can't aɪm ə'freɪd aɪ kɑ:nt 65  
 I'm being served aɪm 'bi:ŋ sɜ:vɪd 23  
 I'm looking for ... aɪm 'lʊkɪŋ fɔ: 23  
 I'm sorry aɪm 'sɔ:ri 64  
 I'm sorry I'm late aɪm 'sɔ:ri aɪm leɪt 64  
 ice aɪs 7  
 ice hockey aɪs 'hɒki 42, 73  
 icon 'aɪkɒn 53  
 icy 'aɪsi 7  
 ID aɪ'di: 100  
 ID card aɪ'di: kɑ:ɪd 73  
 if I were you ɪf aɪ wɜ: ju: 75  
 if you like ɪf ju: laɪk 65  
 ill ɪl 70  
 illegal rɪ'li:ɡəl 69  
 illness 'ɪlnəs 21, 70  
 image 'ɪmɪdʒ 40  
 imagine ɪ'mædʒɪn 87  
 immediately ɪ'mi:diətli 54  
 impatient ɪm'peɪʃənt 11  
 improve ɪm'pru:v 70  
 improvement ɪm'pru:vmənt 70

- in [place] in 90  
in a bad mood in ə bæd mu:d 19  
in a hurry in ə 'hʌrɪ 27, 78  
in a moment in ə 'mɒmənt 78  
in a row in ə rəʊ 41  
in a week's/month's (etc.) time in ə wi:k/s'mʌntθs taɪm 59, 75, 99  
in addition (to) in ə'dɪʃən 93  
in advance in əd'vʌns 48  
in black/blue/brown (etc.) in blæk/blu:/braʊn 22  
in business in 'bɪznɪs 78  
in case in keɪs 94  
in charge of in tʃɑ:dʒ əv 37  
in contrast in 'kɒntrɔ:st 97  
in detail in 'di:teɪl 78  
in fact in fækt 99  
in fashion in 'fæʃən 23  
in future in 'fju:tʃə 78  
in general in 'dʒenərəl 75, 97  
in large quantities in lu:dʒ 'kwɒntətɪz 63  
in love in lʌv 15  
in my opinion in maɪ ə'pɪnjən 66  
in order to in 'ɔ:də tu: 94  
in other words in 'ʌðə wɜ:dz 100  
in progress in 'prɒgres 31  
in response to in rɪ'spɒns tu: 98  
in spite of in spaɪt əv 93  
in tears in tiəz 78  
in that case in ðæt keɪs 76  
in the end in ði end 14, 78, 92  
in the past in ðə pɑ:st 33, 97  
in the wild in ðə waɪld 8  
in the world in ðə wɜ:ld 6  
in time in taɪm 59, 78  
in writing in 'raɪtɪŋ 98  
inability in'æbɪlətɪ 70  
inch ɪntʃ 61  
include ɪn'klu:d 48  
income 'ɪŋkʌm 37  
income tax 'ɪŋkʌm tæks 37, 73  
incorrect ɪn'kɔ:ekt 69  
increase n 'ɪnkri:s 34, 41  
increase v 'ɪnkri:s 41  
incredible ɪn'kredɪbəl 43  
incredibly ɪn'kredɪbli 91  
indefinite article ɪn'defɪnət 'ɑ:tɪkəl 4  
individual ɪndɪ'vɪdʒʊəl 43  
inflation ɪn'fleɪʃən 41  
ingredients ɪn'grɪ:diənts 26  
injure ɪndʒə 30  
injury ɪndʒəri 30  
innocent ɪnəsənt 55  
insect ɪnsekt 8  
inside lane ɪnsaɪd leɪn 30  
insist on doing sth ɪn'sɪst ɒn 'du:ɪŋ 'sʌmθɪŋ 87  
install ɪn'stɔ:l 36, 53  
instant messaging ɪn'stənt 'mesɪdʒɪŋ 54  
instead ɪn'sted 16  
intelligent ɪn'telɪdʒənt 11  
intend ɪn'tend 87  
interest n ɪn'trəst 41  
interest v ɪn'trəst 67  
interest rate ɪn'trəst reɪt 41  
interested in ɪn'trəstɪd ɪn 67, 77  
interests ɪn'trəsts 67, 96  
internet access ɪn'tənət 'ækses 48  
interrupt ɪntə'rʌpt 64  
interview ɪntə'vju: 38  
into ɪntə 90  
introduce sb ɪn'trə'dju:s 'sʌmbɒdi 68  
invent ɪn'vent 70, 80  
invention ɪn'venʃən 70  
invoice ɪn'vɔɪs 39  
involve ɪn'vɒlv 39, 46  
ironing ɪə'niŋ 16  
irregular ɪ'regjələ 69  
irregular (verb) ɪ'regjələ 4  
Is that (Joe, Emma, etc ...?) ɪz ðæt 52  
-ish ɪʃ 10  
ISP ɪs'pi: 54, 100  
Israel ɪz'reɪl 5  
Israeli ɪz'reɪli 5  
it/that depends ɪt/ðæt dɪ'pendz 76  
it seems to me ɪt si:mz tu: mi: 97  
Italian ɪ'tæliən 5  
Italy ɪ'tæli 5  
item ɪtəm 24, 54  
jail dʒeɪl 55  
Japan dʒə'pæn 5  
Japanese ˌdʒæpə'ni:z 5  
jar dʒɑ: 63  
jealous ˌdʒeləs 12  
jealousy ˌdʒeləsi 12  
jogging ˌdʒɒŋɪŋ 42  
join [become a member] dʒɔɪn 36  
join [do sth with others] dʒɔɪn 99  
journalist ˌdʒɜ:nəlɪst 51  
journey ˌdʒɜ:ni 29  
judge dʒʌdʒ 55  
jug dʒʌg 63  
jumper ˌdʒʌmpə 22  
junction ˌdʒʌŋkʃən 30  
junk mail dʒʌŋk meɪl 54  
jury ˌdʒuəri 55  
just as dʒʌst æz 92  
keen on ki:n ɒn 67  
keep [look after] ki:p 28  
keep [stay in a place/condition] ki:p 82  
keep (on) doing sth ki:p 'du:ɪŋ 'sʌmθɪŋ 82  
keep a promise ki:p ə 'prɒmɪs 72  
keep a secret ki:p ə 'si:krət 82  
keep in touch ki:p ɪn tʌtʃ 82  
keep off sth ki:p ɒf 'sʌmθɪŋ 31  
keep right/left ki:p raɪt/left 31  
keep sb fit ki:p 'sʌmbɒdi fɪt 42  
keep sth up ki:p 'sʌmθɪŋ ʌp 82  
kettle 'ketəl 18  
keyboard ˌki:bɔ:d 39, 45, 53  
keyboard player ˌki:bɔ:d 'pleɪə 45  
(I'm/you're, etc.) kidding ˌkɪdɪŋ 76  
kids kɪdz 95  
kill kɪl 58  
kind kaɪnd 11  
kind of kaɪnd əv 76  
Kind regards kaɪnd rɪ'gʊ:dz 98  
kiss n, v kɪs 72  
kitten ˌkɪtən 2  
knee ni: 9  
knowledge (of sth) ˌnɒlɪdʒ 86  
Korean kə'reɪən 5  
lab læb 35, 100  
laboratory ˌləbərətəri 35  
ladder ˌlædə 62  
lamb læm 25  
land v lænd 47  
landing ˌlændɪŋ 47  
landing card ˌlændɪŋ kɑ:d 96  
landline ˌlændlaɪn 52  
landscape ˌlændskeɪp 6  
lane (on a road) leɪn 30  
laptop ˌlæptɒp 53  
large number/amount lu:dʒ ˌnʌmbə/ə'maʊnt 74  
last v lɑ:st 35, 46, 59  
last long lɑ:st lɒŋ 59  
late (50s/60s, etc.) leɪt 14  
lately ˌleɪtli 59  
latest ˌleɪtɪst 44  
laugh v lɑ:f 9  
law lɔ: 35  
lawyer ˌlɔ:ɪ 36  
lazy ˌleɪzi 11  
lead [be in front] li:d 43  
leader ˌli:də 56  
league ˌli:g 43  
lean li:n 31  
leather ˌledə 62  
leave [end a relationship] li:v 15  
leave (a place) li:v 33  
leave a message li:v ə 'mesɪdʒ 52  
leave sb/sth out li:v 'sʌmbɒdi/ 'sʌmθɪŋ aʊt 80  
leave sth somewhere li:v 'sʌmθɪŋ 'sʌmweə 19  
leaves (on a tree) li:vz 28  
lecturer ˌlektʃərə 35, 36  
legal ˌli:gəl 69  
lemon ˌlemən 25  
lend lend 32  
length leŋθ 61  
leopard ˌlepəd 8  
let [allow] let 14  
let you know let ju: nəʊ 99  
lettuce ˌletɪs 25  
library ˌlaɪbrəri 35  
lie down laɪ daʊn 79  
lift n lɪft 17  
light [not dark] laɪt 17  
light [not much] laɪt 7, 74  
light lunch laɪt lʌntʃ 16

lightning 'laɪtnɪŋ 7  
 like [similar to] laɪk 85  
 likely 'laɪkli 24  
 limited number/amount/choice  
 'lɪmɪtɪd 'nʌmbəʔə'maʊnt/tʃɔɪs  
 74  
 limited vocabulary  
 'lɪmɪtɪd və'kæbjələri 74  
 link (computer) lɪŋk 54  
 link word lɪŋk wɜ:d 4  
 lion 'laɪən 8  
 lips lɪps 9  
 listen [pay attention] 'lɪsən 85  
 literature 'lɪtrətʃə 44  
 live adj laɪv 45  
 lively 'laɪvli 27, 49  
 liver 'lɪvə 21  
 loads of sth ləʊdz ɒv 'sʌmθɪŋ 39  
 loan ləʊn 41  
 location ləʊ'keɪʃən 17  
 lock v lɒk 69  
 log in/on lɒg ɪn/ɒn 53  
 log off/out lɒg ɒf/aʊt 53  
 look n, v lʊk 85  
 look after sb lʊk 'ɑ:ftə  
 'sʌmbədi 80  
 look sth up lʊk 'sʌmθɪŋ ʌp 3,  
 32, 79  
 loose lu:s 23  
 lorry 'lɔ:ri 29  
 lose (a game) lu:z 43  
 lose weight lu:z weɪt 74  
 loser 'lu:zə 43  
 loss lɒs 41  
 loud noise laʊd nɔɪz 74  
 love v lʌv 67  
 Love (greeting) lʌv 99  
 luckily 'lʌkəli 16  
 luggage 'lʌgɪdʒ 47  
 lung cancer lʌŋ 'kænsə 21  
 lungs lʌŋz 21  
 lyrics 'lɪrɪks 45  
 mad about sb məd ə'baʊt  
 'sʌmbədi 77  
 magnificent məg'nɪfɪsənt 49  
 main course meɪn kɔ:s 48  
 main road meɪn rəʊd 30  
 mainly 'meɪnli 52  
 majority mə'dʒɔ:rəti 60  
 make [cause sb to do sth] meɪk  
 24, 81  
 make [force sb to do sth] meɪk  
 81  
 make a comparison meɪk ə  
 kəm'pærɪsən 97  
 make a decision meɪk ə  
 dɪ'sɪʒən 81  
 make a mistake meɪk ə mɪ'steɪk  
 81  
 make a noise meɪk ə nɔɪz 81  
 make a profit/loss  
 meɪk ə 'prɒfɪt/lɒs 41  
 make an attempt  
 meɪk ən ə'tempt 72  
 make an effort meɪk ən 'efət  
 81  
 make friends meɪk frendz 81  
 make generalisations  
 meɪk ˌdʒenərələɪ'zeɪʃənz 97

make it meɪk ɪt 95  
 make (money) meɪk 37  
 make sth up meɪk 'sʌmθɪŋ  
 ʌp 80  
 make the bed meɪk ðə bed 16  
 make up your mind  
 meɪk ʌp jɔ: maɪnd 75, 81  
 make yourself understood  
 meɪk jɔ:'self ˌʌndə'stʊd 34  
 make-up 'meɪkʌp 16  
 male meɪl 33, 68  
 manage [run a business]  
 'mænɪdʒ 70  
 manage [succeed in doing sth]  
 'mænɪdʒ 14  
 management 'mænɪdʒmənt 70  
 Mandarin 'mændərɪn 5  
 marital status 'mæɪrɪəl 'steɪtəs  
 96  
 mark [grade] mɑ:k 34  
 market 'mɑ:kɪt 49  
 marry 'mæri 15  
 marvellous 'mɑ:vələs 89  
 match v mætʃ 23  
 mate meɪt 13, 95  
 material mə'tɪəriəl 62  
 maths mæθs 100  
 me neither mi: 'naɪðə 67  
 me too mi: tu: 67  
 meal mi:l 16  
 mean adj mi:n 11  
 mean v mi:n 32  
 meaning 'mi:nɪŋ 32  
 measure 'meʒə 32  
 mechanic mi'kæntɪk 36  
 media reporting  
 'mi:diə rɪ'pɔ:tɪŋ 51  
 medicine [the subject] 'medsən  
 35  
 medicine [to treat an illness]  
 'medsən 21  
 medium [meat] 'mi:diəm 48  
 medium height 'mi:diəm haɪt  
 10  
 melon 'melən 25  
 mend mend 36  
 mention 'menʃən 88  
 mess mes 2  
 metal 'metəl 62  
 mice maɪs 8  
 mid (30s/40s, etc.) mɪd 14  
 Middle East 'mɪdəl'i:st 5  
 middle-aged 'mɪdəl'eɪdʒd 14  
 mild maɪld 7  
 mile maɪl 61  
 million 'mɪljən 60  
 mind v maɪnd 67  
 mind (+ -ing) maɪnd 87  
 mind the step maɪnd ðə step  
 31  
 mind your head maɪnd jɔ: hed  
 31  
 minimum wage  
 'mɪnɪməm weɪdʒ 37  
 minor (offence) 'maɪnə 55  
 minority maɪ'nɔ:rəti 60  
 minus 'maɪnəs 6  
 minus adj 'maɪnəs 60  
 miserable 'mɪzərəbəl 12

mishear mɪs'hɪə 69  
 miss [avoid] mɪs 82  
 miss [not hear] mɪs 82  
 miss sb mɪs 'sʌmbədi 82  
 miss a chance/opportunity  
 mɪs ə tʃɑ:ns/ɔ'pɔ:tjʊ:nəti 82  
 miss the bus/train (etc.)  
 mɪs ðə bʌs/treɪn 19, 29, 74  
 missing 'mɪsɪŋ 58  
 misunderstand ,mɪsʌndə'stænd  
 69  
 mix n mɪks 27  
 mix sth up mɪks 'sʌmθɪŋ ʌp 2  
 mobile edition 'məʊbaɪl ɪ'dɪʃən  
 51  
 mobile number  
 'məʊbaɪl 'nʌmbə 52  
 monkey 'mʌŋki 8  
 monthly 'mʌntθli 51  
 mood mu:d 12  
 mosque mɒsk 49  
 mosquito mə'ski:təʊ 8  
 mostly 'məʊstli 52  
 mother tongue 'mʌðə tʌŋ 73  
 mother/brother/son-in-law  
 'mʌðə/'brʌðə/sʌn ɪn lɔ: 13  
 motorbike 'məʊtəbaɪk 29  
 mouse (animal) maʊs 8  
 mouse (computer) maʊs 53  
 mouse mat maʊs mæt 53  
 move mu:v 17  
 MP ,em'pi: 56, 100  
 Mr 'mɪstə 100  
 Mrs 'mɪsɪz 100  
 multiplication ,mʌltɪplɪ'keɪʃən  
 60  
 multiplied by 'mʌltɪplaɪd baɪ  
 60  
 murder n, v 'mɜ:də 55  
 murderer 'mɜ:dərə 55  
 mushroom 'mʌʃru:m 25  
 musical 'mju:zɪkəl 71  
 mussels 'mʌsəlz 25  
 my view/feeling is  
 maɪ vju:/'fi:liŋ ɪz 66  
 narrow 'nærəʊ 10, 61  
 national 'næʃənəl 51, 62, 71  
 navy [army] 'neɪvi 36  
 navy blue 'neɪvi blu: 62  
 nearest 'ni:əɪst 61  
 nearly 'ni:əli 14  
 necessary 'nesəsəri 2  
 neck nek 9  
 necklace 'nekləs 22  
 negative 'negətɪv 11  
 neither do/am/can I 'naɪðə du:/  
 æm/kæn aɪ 67  
 nephew 'nefju: 13  
 nervous 'nɜ:vəs 11  
 net net 42  
 never mind 'nevə maɪnd 64  
 news nju:z 86  
 next time nekst taɪm 59  
 nice naɪs 11  
 nice to meet you  
 naɪs tu: mi:t ju: 68  
 niece ni:s 13  
 night after night naɪt 'ɑ:ftə naɪt  
 75

- nightlife 'naɪtlaɪf 27  
 nil nil 43  
 nine-to-five adj naɪn tuː faɪv 37  
 no entry nəʊ 'entri 31  
 no exit nəʊ 'eksɪt 31  
 no parking nəʊ 'pɑːkɪŋ 31  
 no problem nəʊ 'prɒbləm 64, 65  
 no vacancies nəʊ 'veɪkəntsɪz 31  
 no way/chance nəʊ weɪ/tʃɑːns 76  
 nod your head nɒd jɔː hed 9  
 normal 'nɔːməl 71  
 north nɔːθ 6  
 north-east nɔːθ 'iːst 6  
 north-west nɔːθ 'west 6  
 not at all nɒt æt ɔːl 64  
 not (so) bad nɒt bæd 68  
 not really nɒt 'riəli 76  
 note [money] nəʊt 20  
 nothing to declare 'nʌθɪŋ tuː dɪ'kleə 47  
 notice n 'nəʊtɪs 31  
 notice v 'nəʊtɪs 88  
 noticeboard 'nəʊtɪsbɔːd 39  
 nought nɔːt 60  
 noun naʊn 4  
 novel 'nɒvəl 44  
 now and again naʊ ænd ə'gen 75  
 now and then naʊ ænd ðen 75  
 nowadays 'naʊədeɪz 59, 97  
 nowhere to park 'nəʊweə tuː pɑːk 27  
 nurse nɜːs 36  
 nursery school 'nɜːsəri skuːl 33  
 obesity ə'biːsəti 97  
 object n 'ɒbdʒɪkt 62  
 occasionally ə'keɪʒənəli 91  
 ocean 'oʊʃən 6  
 octopus 'ɒktəpəs 8  
 of course ɒf kɔːs 65  
 off [absent] ɒf 37, 39  
 offence ə'fens 55  
 offer 'ɒfə 87  
 official ə'fɪʃəl 3  
 oh [O] əʊ 60  
 oil [fuel] ɔɪl 57  
 oil [on food] ɔɪl 25  
 old friend əʊld frend 13  
 olives 'ɒlɪvz 25  
 omit ə'mɪt 80  
 on [place] ɒn 90  
 on and off ɒn ænd ɒf 75  
 on board ɒn bɔːd 78  
 on business ɒn 'bɪznɪs 78  
 on display ɒn dɪ'spleɪ 78  
 on earth ɒn ɜːθ 6  
 on fire ɒn 'faɪə 78  
 on my/your own ɒn maɪ/jɔːr əʊn 15, 96  
 on purpose ɒn 'pɜːpəs 78  
 on record ɒn 'rekɔːd 57  
 on strike ɒn straɪk 78  
 on the first/second (etc.) floor ɒn ðə fɜːst/'sekənd flɔː 17  
 on the Internet ɒn ði 'ɪntənɪt 54  
 on the one hand ɒn ðə wʌn hænd 97  
 on the other hand ɒn ði 'ʌðə hænd 97  
 on the outskirts ɒn ði 'aʊtsaɪts 17  
 on the phone ɒn ðə fəʊn 52, 78  
 on the way ɒn ðə weɪ 30  
 on the whole ɒn ðə həʊl 75, 97  
 on time ɒn taɪm 59, 78  
 once wʌns 68  
 once a week/month (etc.) wʌns ə wɪk/mʌnθ 16  
 once again wʌns ə'gen 99  
 once or twice wʌns ɔː twaɪs 75  
 one day wʌn deɪ 59  
 one of the advantages of ... wʌn ɒv ði əd'vɑːntɪdʒɪz ɒv 97  
 onion 'ʌnjən 25  
 only child 'əʊnli tʃaɪld 13  
 open space 'əʊpən speɪs 28  
 opera (singer) 'ɒpərə 45  
 operate on sb 'ɒpəreɪt ɒn 'sʌmbɒdi 36  
 operating system 'ɒpəreɪtɪŋ 'sɪstəm 53  
 operation ,ɒpə'reɪʃən 21  
 opposite 'ɒpəzɪt 1  
 or so ɔː səʊ 95  
 orchestra 'ɔːkɪstrə 45  
 ordinary 'ɔːdɪnəri 10  
 organisation ,ɔːgənə'zeɪʃən 39  
 organise 'ɔːgənəɪz 39  
 otherwise 'ʌðəwaɪz 94  
 out [not there] aʊt 52  
 out of aʊt ɒv 90  
 out of order aʊt ɒv 'ɔːdə 19, 31  
 out of the blue aʊt ɒv ðə bluː 75  
 out of work aʊt ɒv wɜːk 38  
 out-of-date ,aʊtəv'deɪt 78  
 outside lane 'aʊtsaɪd leɪn 30  
 outstanding ,aʊt'stændɪŋ 43  
 oven 'ʌvən 18, 26  
 over [more than] 'əʊvə 6  
 over [movement] 'əʊvə 90  
 overcharge ,əʊvə'tʃɑːdʒ 69  
 overhead locker 'əʊvəhed 'lɒkə 47  
 oversleep ,əʊvə'sliːp 64  
 overtake ,əʊvə'teɪk 30  
 overtime 'əʊvətəɪm 37  
 overweight ,əʊvə'weɪt 10  
 owe əʊ 20  
 own adj əʊn 18, 38  
 own v əʊn 17, 28, 38  
 owner 'əʊnə 38  
 pack pæk 69  
 packed pækt 49  
 packet 'pækɪt 63  
 pain peɪn 21  
 painful 'peɪnfəl 21, 71  
 painless 'peɪnləs 71  
 pair peə 63  
 palace 'pælɪs 49  
 paper [newspaper] 'peɪpə 51  
 paperwork 'peɪpəwɜːk 39  
 parade pə'reɪd 46  
 parcel 'pɑːsəl 31  
 parked car pɑːkt kɑː 30  
 parrot 'pærət 8  
 part of speech pɑːt ɒv spiːtʃ 3  
 partly 'pɑːtli 66  
 partner 'pɑːtnə 32  
 part-time 'pɑːt'taɪm 38  
 pass an exam pɑːs æn ɪg'zæm 34  
 passenger 'pæsəndʒə 47  
 password 'pɑːswɜːd 53  
 paste peɪst 53  
 patient adj 'peɪʃənt 11  
 patient n 'peɪʃənt 21  
 pause pɔːz 4  
 pavement 'peɪvmənt 30  
 pay n, v peɪ 37  
 pay attention peɪ ə'tenʃən 76  
 pay back peɪ bæk 41  
 pay rise peɪ raɪz 38  
 PC 'piːsiː 53, 100  
 peace and quiet piːs ænd 'kwaɪət 75  
 peaceful 'piːsfəl 71  
 peach piːtʃ 25  
 pear peə 25  
 peas piːz 25  
 pedestrian pə'destrɪən 30  
 pedestrian crossing pə'destrɪən 'krɒsɪŋ 30  
 peel piːl 26  
 pencil sharpener 'pensəl 'ʃɑːpənə 32  
 per cent pə'sent 41, 60  
 percentage pə'sentɪdʒ 41  
 perform pə'fɔːm 45  
 performance pə'fɔːməns 45  
 permanent 'pɜːmənənt 1  
 permission pə'mɪʃən 65  
 personal (opinion) 'pɜːsənəl 71  
 personal details 'pɜːsənəl 'diːteɪlz 96  
 personal statement 'pɜːsənəl 'steɪtmənt 96  
 personally 'pɜːsənəli 66  
 persuade pə'sweɪd 88  
 pet pet 8  
 phone fəʊn 100  
 phone sb back fəʊn 'sʌmbɒdi bæk 52  
 phonemic symbol fə'niːmɪk 'sɪmbəl 3, 4  
 photo 'fəʊtəʊ 100  
 photocopier 'fəʊtəʊ,kɒpiə 39  
 phrasal verb 'freɪzəl vɜːb 4  
 phrase freɪz 3, 4  
 pianist 'piːənɪst 45  
 piano pi'ænəʊ 45  
 pick pɪk 28  
 pick sb up [collect sb] pɪk 'sʌmbɒdi ʌp 79  
 pick sth up [learn] pɪk 'sʌmθɪŋ ʌp 34  
 pick sth up [lift sth from the floor] pɪk 'sʌmθɪŋ ʌp 79

pie paɪ 26  
 piece pi:ɪs 63, 86  
 pill pil 21  
 pillow 'pɪləʊ 18  
 pilot 'paɪlət 36  
 pineapple 'paɪnæpəl 25  
 pink piŋk 62  
 pipe paɪp 36  
 pitch piʧ 42  
 place [town/building] pleɪs 49  
 plan plæn 36  
 plane pleɪn 100  
 planet 'plænit 6  
 plant n plɑ:nt 28  
 plant v plɑ:nt 57  
 plastic 'plæstɪk 62  
 platform 'plætfɔ:m 29  
 play (a game) pleɪ 42  
 play against sb pleɪ ə'genst  
 'sʌmbədi 43  
 pleasant 'plezənt 11  
 Please accept our apologies  
 for ... pli:z ək'sept 'əʊər  
 ə'pɒlədʒɪz fɔ: 98  
 Please could you ...?  
 pli:z kəd ju: 98  
 plenty 'plenti 49, 63  
 plug plʌg 32  
 plug sth in plʌg 'sʌmθɪŋ ɪn 32  
 plumber 'plʌmə 36  
 plus plʌs 60  
 PM ,pi:'em 100  
 pocket 'pɒkɪt 22  
 pocket money 'pɒkɪt 'mʌni 86  
 podcast 'pɒdkɑ:st 51  
 poet 'pəʊt 44  
 poetry 'pəʊtri 44  
 point [decimal point] pɔɪnt 60  
 point [idea] pɔɪnt 66  
 point of view pɔɪnt əv vju: 97  
 pointed 'pɔɪntɪd 62  
 Poland 'pɒlənd 5  
 police force pə'li:s fɔ:s 36  
 police officer pə'li:s 'ɒfɪsə 36  
 policy 'pɒləsi 56  
 Polish 'pɒlɪʃ 5  
 polite pə'laɪt 65  
 politely pə'laɪtli 91  
 political pə'lɪtɪkəl 56  
 political party pə'lɪtɪkəl 'pɑ:ti  
 56  
 pollution pə'lu:ʃən 27  
 pop music pɒp 'mju:zɪk 45  
 popular 'pɒpjələ 46, 70  
 popularity ,pɒpjə'lærəti 70  
 population ,pɒpjə'leɪʃən 5  
 pork pɔ:k 25  
 Portuguese ,pɔ:tfə'gi:z 5  
 positive 'pɒzətɪv 11  
 post n [different meanings]  
 pəʊst 3  
 post [message] pəʊst 54  
 postgraduate ,pəʊst'grædʒuət  
 35  
 postpone pəʊst'pəʊn 80  
 pour (with rain) pɔ: 7  
 powerful 'paʊəfəl 56  
 prawns prɔ:nz 25

predict (the future) pri'dɪkt 74  
 prefer pri'fɜ: 67  
 prefix 'pri:fɪks 4  
 pregnancy 'pregnənsɪ 15  
 pregnant 'pregnənt 15  
 preparation ,prepə'reɪʃən 34  
 preposition ,prepə'zɪʃən 4  
 pretty [attractive] 'prɪti 10  
 pretty [rather] 'prɪti 91  
 pride praɪd 12  
 primary school 'praɪməri sku:l  
 33  
 prime minister praɪm 'mɪnɪstə  
 56  
 print prɪnt 53  
 print sth out prɪnt 'sʌmθɪŋ aʊt  
 53  
 printer 'prɪntə 53  
 prison 'prɪzən 55  
 private 'praɪvət 33  
 proceed prə'si:d 95  
 produce v prə'dju:s 37, 39  
 product 'prɒdʌkt 37  
 production prə'dʌkʃən 39  
 profession prə'feʃən 36  
 profit 'prɒfɪt 41  
 progress n 'prɒɡres 86  
 promise n, v 'prɒmɪs 72  
 promise (+ obj) that  
 'prɒmɪs ðæt 88  
 promise to do sth 'prɒmɪs tu: du:  
 'sʌmθɪŋ 87  
 promote prə'məʊt 38  
 promotion prə'məʊʃən 38  
 pronoun 'prəʊnaʊn 4  
 pronounce prə'naʊns 32  
 pronunciation prə,nʌnsɪ'eɪʃən  
 32  
 properly 'prɒpəli 19  
 protect prə'tekt 8, 58  
 protection prə'tekʃən 50  
 proud praʊd 12  
 provide prə'vaɪd 56  
 psychologist saɪ'kɒlədʒɪst 35  
 psychology saɪ'kɒlədʒi 35  
 public transport  
 'pʌblɪk 'trænspɔ:t 28, 29, 73  
 publish 'pʌblɪʃ 51  
 punctuation ,pʌŋktʃu'eɪʃən 4  
 punish 'pʌnɪʃ 33, 55  
 punishment 'pʌnɪʃmənt 55  
 pupil 'pju:pəl 33  
 purchase 'pɜ:tʃəs 95  
 purple 'pɜ:pəl 62  
 purpose 'pɜ:pəs 94  
 push pʊʃ 82  
 put on make-up put ɒn 'meɪkʌp  
 16  
 put on the brakes  
 put ɒn ðə breɪks 72  
 put on weight put ɒn weɪt 74  
 put sb through put 'sʌmbədi  
 θru: 52  
 put sth back put 'sʌmθɪŋ bæk  
 79  
 put sth off put 'sʌmθɪŋ ɒf 80  
 put sth on [make equipment  
 work] put 'sʌmθɪŋ ɒn 79

put sth up [raise] put 'sʌmθɪŋ  
 ʌp 79  
 put sth on [put clothes on your  
 body] put 'sʌmθɪŋ ɒn  
 22, 79, 80  
 qualification ,kwɒlɪfɪ'keɪʃən  
 35, 96  
 qualified 'kwɒlɪfaɪd 35  
 qualify 'kwɒlɪfaɪ 35  
 quality 'kwɒləti 40  
 quantity 'kwɒntəti 63  
 quarter [one quarter] 'kwɔ:tə 60  
 quarter [three months] 'kwɔ:tə  
 41  
 question mark 'kwɛstʃən mɑ:k  
 4  
 queue n kju: 24, 29, 72  
 queue v kju: 31, 72  
 quiet 'kwaɪət 27  
 quietly 'kwaɪətli 91  
 quit kwɪt 38  
 quite kwart 91  
 quite a bit kwart ə bɪt 95  
 quite a long way kwart ə lɒŋ weɪ  
 61  
 quite likely kwart 'laɪkli 74  
 quite often kwart 'ɒfən 91  
 rabbit 'ræbɪt 8  
 race n reɪs 43  
 race v reɪs 42  
 racing driver 'reɪsɪŋ 'draɪvə 42  
 rain n, v reɪn 7  
 rainforest 'reɪn,fɒrɪst 6  
 raise reɪz 41  
 range reɪndʒ 24  
 rare [meat] reə 48  
 rare [unusual] reə 8  
 rarely 'reəli 91  
 rather 'rɑ:ðə 91  
 raw rɔ: 2, 26  
 real riəl 62  
 realise 'riələɪz 88  
 reality TV show  
 ri'æləti ,ti:'vi:ʃəʊ 51  
 really [very] 'riəli 89  
 really? [to express surprise]  
 'riəli 67  
 reason 'ri:zən 94  
 reasonable 'ri:zənəbəl 23, 71  
 recently 'ri:səntli 59  
 reception [in a hotel] rɪ'sepʃən  
 48  
 reception [wedding party]  
 rɪ'sepʃən 15  
 recession rɪ'seʃən 41  
 recipe 'resɪpi 26  
 recommend (+ -ing) ,rekə'mend  
 87  
 recommend + that  
 ,rekə'mend ðæt 50, 88  
 record n 'rekɔ:d 43  
 record v rɪ'kɔ:d 45  
 recording studio  
 rɪ'kɔ:dɪŋ 'stju:diəʊ 45  
 red pepper red 'pepə 25  
 reduce ri'dju:s 56, 57  
 reduction ri'dʌkʃən 56  
 reference 'refərəns 96  
 refund n 'ri:fʌnd 24

- regarding rɪ'gɑ:dɪŋ 95, 98  
region rɪ:dʒən 6  
regional rɪ:dʒənəl 51  
registration form  
'redʒɪ'streɪʃən fɔ:m 96  
regret n, v rɪ'gret 72, 98  
regular (verb) 'regjələ 4  
regularly 'regjələli 54  
reject v rɪ'dʒekt 80  
relating to rɪ'leɪtɪŋ tu: 3  
relations rɪ'leɪʃənz 13  
relationship rɪ'leɪʃənʃɪp 15  
relatives 'relətɪvz 13  
relax rɪ'læks 70  
relaxation ,rɪ:læks'eɪʃən 70  
relaxed rɪ'lækst 33  
relevant 'reləvənt 96  
reliable rɪ'laɪəbəl 11, 29, 71  
rely on rɪ'laɪ ɒn 77  
remarry ,rɪ:'mæri 13  
remind rɪ'maɪnd 88  
remove rɪ'mu:v 19  
rent n, v rent 17, 20  
repair rɪ'peə 36  
repeat rɪ'pi:t 32  
repetition ,repi'tɪʃən 32  
replace rɪ'pleɪs 24  
reply n, v rɪ'plai 54, 65, 72  
report rɪ'pɔ:t 51  
reporter rɪ'pɔ:tə 51  
represent ,reprɪ'zent 36  
request n rɪ'kwest 65  
require rɪ'kwaɪə 95, 96  
rescue n, v 'reskjʊ: 72  
research n rɪ'sɜ:tʃ 35  
reserve rɪ'zɜ:v 48  
resign rɪ'zaɪn 38  
resignation ,rezɪg'neɪʃən 38  
responsible for rɪ'spɒnsəbəl fɔ:  
37  
result [consequence] rɪ'zʌlt  
57, 97  
result [in a competition] rɪ'zʌlt  
43  
retake sth ,rɪ:'teɪk 'sʌmθɪŋ 34  
retire rɪ'taɪə 38  
retired rɪ'taɪəd 14  
retirement rɪ'taɪəmənt 14, 38  
review rɪ'vju: 44, 51  
reviewer rɪ'vju:ə 44  
revise rɪ'vaɪz 1, 34  
revision rɪ'vɪʒən 34  
rewrite 'ri:raɪt 69  
ride [a bike] raɪd 29  
right [exactly] raɪt 90  
right away raɪt ə'weɪ 75  
ring v rɪŋ 52, 72  
ring [jewellery] n rɪŋ 22  
ring a bell rɪŋ ə bel 75  
rink rɪŋk 42  
rise n, v raɪz 41  
road sign rəʊd saɪn 30  
roast rəʊst 26  
rob rɒb 55  
robber 'rɒbə 55  
robbery 'rɒbəri 55  
rock rɒk 50  
rock climbing rɒk 'klaɪmɪŋ 42  
romantic comedy  
rəʊ'mæntɪk 'kɒmədi 44  
room [space] ru:m 86  
room service ru:m 'sɜ:vɪs 48  
roots ru:ts 28  
rough (sea) rʌf 50  
roughly 'rʌfli 10, 14  
round [movement] raʊnd 90  
round [shape] raʊnd 62  
round the corner  
raʊnd ðə 'kɔ:nə 29, 61  
routine ru:'ti:n 1  
rub sth out rʌb 'sʌmθɪŋ aʊt  
1, 32  
rubber 'rʌbə 1, 32, 62  
rubbish 'rʌbɪʃ 86  
rucksack 'rʌksæk 22  
rug rʌg 18  
ruler 'ru:lə 32  
run [manage] rʌn 37, 40  
run [use applications] rʌn 53  
run out of sth rʌn aʊt ɒv  
'sʌmθɪŋ 19, 39  
runway 'rʌnweɪ 47  
rush hour rʌʃ 'aʊə 27  
Russia 'rʌʃə 5  
Russian 'rʌʃən 5  
sack n, vsæk 38  
safe seɪf 27  
sail seɪl 42  
sailing 'seɪlɪŋ 42  
sailor 'seɪlə 36, 42  
salad 'sæləd 25  
salad dressing 'sæləd 'dresɪŋ 25  
salary 'sæləri 37  
sales rep seɪlz rep 100  
salmon 'sæmən 25  
same to you seɪm tu: ju: 68  
sand sænd 50  
sandy 'sændi 50  
satisfied with 'sætɪsfaɪd wɪð 77  
saucapan 'səʊspən 26  
Saudi Arabia 'səʊdi ə'reɪbiə 5  
Saudi Arabian 'səʊdi ə'reɪbiən  
5  
save [keep] seɪv 53, 57  
save [rescue] seɪv 72  
save (up) seɪv 20, 79  
saxophone 'sæksəfəʊn 45  
saxophonist sæk'sɒfənɪst 45  
say [give information in writing]  
seɪ 51, 66  
say + that seɪ ðæt 88  
Scandinavia ,skændɪ'neɪviə 5  
scared skeəd 12  
scarf skɑ:f 22  
scenery 'si:nəri 28, 86  
science 'saɪəns 35  
science fiction 'saɪəns 'fɪkʃən 44  
scientist 'saɪəntɪst 70  
score a goal skɔ:r ə gəʊl 74  
search n, v sɜ:tʃ 54, 58  
seaside resort 'si:saɪd rɪ'zɔ:t 50  
season (in the year) 'si:zən 28  
season ticket 'si:zən 'tɪkɪt 29  
seat belt seɪt belt 47  
second (time) 'sekənd 59  
secondary school  
'sekəndəri sku:l 33  
secondly 'sekəndli 92  
secret 'si:kret 56  
see [find out] si: 3  
see [use your eyes] si: 85  
see the sights si: ðə saɪts 49  
seem si:m 85  
seldom 'seldəm 91  
semi-circle 'semi 'sɜ:kəl 62  
send my regards/love to  
send maɪ rɪ'gɑ:dz lʌv tu: 99  
sense of humour  
sens ɒv 'hju:mə 11  
sensible 'sensɪbəl 11  
series 'sɪəri:z 51  
serious [bad] 'sɪəriəs 21, 74  
serious [important] 'sɪəriəs 15  
serious [quiet] 'sɪəriəs 11  
serve v sɜ:v 23  
service 'sɜ:vɪs 48  
set off set ɒf 80  
set sth up set 'sʌmθɪŋ ʌp 37, 40  
several 'sevərəl 63  
shade ʃeɪd 50  
shake hands ʃeɪk hændz 9, 68  
shake your head ʃeɪk jɔ: hed 9  
shall we ...? ʃæl wi: 65  
share ʃeə 18, 32  
shark ʃɑ:k 8  
sharp(ly) ʃɑ:p 41  
sharpen 'ʃɑ:pən 32  
shave ʃeɪv 16  
sheet [of a bed] ʃi:t 18  
sheet [of paper] ʃi:t 63  
shelf ʃelf 24  
shine ʃaɪn 7  
shocked ʃɒkt 89  
shocking 'ʃɒkɪŋ 89  
shoot ʃu:t 58  
shop v ʃɒp 23  
shop assistant ʃɒp ə'sɪstənt 23  
shopping centre 'ʃɒpɪŋ 'sentə  
24  
shore ʃɔ: 50  
short of sth ʃɔ:t ɒv 'sʌmθɪŋ 77  
shoulder 'ʃəʊldə 9  
shout at/to sb ʃaʊt æt (tu:  
'sʌmbədi 77  
show sb around ʃəʊ 'sʌmbədi  
ə'raʊnd 39  
shower [bath] 'ʃaʊə 16  
shower [of rain] 'ʃaʊə 7  
shy ʃaɪ 11  
sight saɪt 85  
sights saɪts 49  
sightseeing 'saɪtsi:ŋ 49  
sign n saɪn 30  
sign v saɪn 98  
sign (of sth happening) saɪn 41  
signature 'sɪgnətʃə 96, 98  
signed saɪnd 96  
significance sɪg'nɪfɪkəns 71  
silence 'saɪləns 31  
silently 'saɪləntli 1  
silk sɪlk 62  
silly 'sɪli 11  
similar 'sɪmɪlə 70, 77  
similarity ,sɪmɪ'lærɪti 70  
simple 'sɪmpəl 34

- since [conjunction] sɪns 94, 99  
 since [preposition] sɪns 59  
 singer 'sɪŋə 70  
 single [record] 'sɪŋɡəl 45  
 single room 'sɪŋɡəl ru:m 48  
 sink sɪŋk 18  
 sister-in-law 'sɪstətɪnlɔ: 13  
 situation ,sɪtʃu'eɪʃən 68  
 size saɪz 23, 61  
 ski v ski: 42  
 skills skɪlz 96  
 skin skɪn 9  
 skirt skɜ:t 22  
 skis ski:z 42  
 sky skaɪ 7  
 sleep n sli:p 16  
 sleeping bag 'sli:pɪŋ bæŋ 86  
 sleeve sli:v 22  
 slice slaɪs 63  
 slight slaɪt 41  
 slightly 'slaɪtli 41, 91  
 slip sɪp 19  
 smart [well-dressed] smɑ:t 10, 22, 33  
 smell n, v smel 85  
 smooth smu:ð 1  
 snack snæk 16  
 snake sneɪk 8  
 snow v snəʊ 7  
 so səʊ 94  
 so do/am I səʊ du:/æm aɪ 67  
 so that səʊ ðæt 94  
 soap opera səʊp 'ɒpərə 51  
 sociable 'səʊʃəbəl 71  
 social networking site 'səʊʃəl 'netwɜ:kɪŋ saɪt 54  
 socket 'sɒkɪt 32  
 sofa 'səʊfə 18  
 software 'sɒftweə 53  
 sold out səʊld aʊt 31  
 soldier 'səʊldʒə 36, 58  
 solo artist 'səʊləʊ 'ɑ:tɪst 45  
 solution sə'lu:ʃən 57  
 some people believe ... sʌm 'pi:pəl bɪ'li:v 97  
 something wrong with 'sʌmθɪŋ rɒŋ wɪð 77  
 songwriter 'sɒŋ,raɪtə 45  
 sooner or later 'su:nər ɔ: 'leɪtə 75  
 sore throat sɔ: θrəʊt 21  
 sorry to disturb you 'sɒri tu: dɪ'stɜ:b ju: 64  
 sorry to keep you waiting 'sɒri tu: ki:p ju: 'weɪtɪŋ 64  
 sort of sɔ:t ɒv 76  
 sort sth out sɔ:t 'sʌmθɪŋ aʊt 79  
 sound saʊnd 85  
 sour 'saʊə 26  
 south saʊθ 6  
 South Korea saʊθ kə'ri:ə 5  
 south-east saʊθ 'i:st 6  
 south-west saʊθ 'west 6  
 souvenir 'su:vən'iə 49  
 space speɪs 17  
 spacebar 'speɪsbɑ: 53  
 Spain speɪn 5  
 spam spæm 54  
 Spanish 'spænɪʃ 5  
 spare room speə ru:m 18  
 spare time speə taɪm 16  
 sparkling 'spɑ:kəlɪŋ 48  
 Speaking [on the phone] 'spi:kɪŋ 52  
 special offer 'speʃəl 'ɒfə 24  
 spectacular spek'tækjələ 46  
 speech spi:tʃ 82  
 speed limit spi:d 'lɪmɪt 30  
 spell spel 32  
 spelling 'spelɪŋ 32  
 spend (money) on spend ɒn 77  
 spend time spend taɪm 50, 74  
 spicy 'spɑ:si 26  
 spider 'spaɪdə 8  
 spill spɪl 19  
 spinach 'spɪnɪʃ 25  
 spoonful 'spu:nfʊl 63  
 square adj, n skweə 62  
 St seɪnt/stri:t 100  
 stadium 'steɪdɪəm 42  
 stall stɔ:l 24  
 star [famous actor] stɑ: 44  
 starter 'stɑ:tə 48  
 state education steɪt ,edʒu'keɪʃən 33  
 station [broadcasting] 'steɪʃən 51  
 statue 'stætʃu: 49  
 stay n steɪ 48  
 stay at school steɪ æt sku:l 33  
 stay behind steɪ bɪ'haɪnd 33  
 stay in steɪ ɪn 16  
 stay out late steɪ aʊt leɪt 14  
 stay the same steɪ ðə seɪm 41  
 steal sti:l 55  
 stepfather 'step,fɑ:ðə 13  
 steps steɪps 17  
 sterling 'stɜ:ɪŋ 20  
 stick stɪk 42  
 still [continuing] stɪl 93  
 still [of water] stɪl 48  
 stir stɜ: 26  
 stomach ache 'stʌmək eɪk 21  
 store stɔ: 53  
 storm stɔ:m 7  
 straight streɪt 10  
 straight away streɪt ə'weɪ 75  
 stranger 'streɪndʒə 68  
 strawberry 'strɔ:bəri 25  
 street market stri:t 'mɑ:kɪt 24  
 stress [emphasis] stres 4  
 stress [worry] stres 12  
 stressed strest 27  
 stressful 'stresfʊl 27  
 strict strikt 14, 33  
 stripe straɪp 62  
 stroll strɔ:l 50  
 strong (wind) strɒŋ 7  
 study n 'stʌdi 18  
 stuff stʌf 95  
 stupid 'stju:pɪd 11, 70  
 stupidity stju:'pɪdəti 70  
 stylish 'stɑɪlɪʃ 22, 62  
 subject 'sʌbdʒɪkt 33  
 subtraction səb'trækʃən 60  
 succeed (in doing sth) sək'si:d 35, 38  
 success sək'ses 38  
 successful sək'sesfʊl 35, 38  
 suddenly 'sʌdnli. 91  
 suffer 'sʌfə 57  
 suffer from sth 'sʌfə frɒm 'sʌmθɪŋ 21  
 suffix 'sʌfɪks 4  
 suggest (+ -ing) sə'dʒest x 87  
 suggest + that sə'dʒest ðæt 88  
 suggestion sə'dʒestʃən 65  
 suit n su:t 22  
 suit v su:t 22, 23  
 suitable 'su:təbəl 71  
 suitcase 'su:tkeɪs 47  
 sun sʌn 7  
 sunbathe 'sʌnbeɪð 50  
 sunbathing 'sʌnbeɪðɪŋ 50  
 sunburn 'sʌnbɜ:n 50  
 sun cream sʌn kri:m 50  
 sunglasses 'sʌn,glɑ:sɪz 73  
 sunny 'sʌni 7  
 sunscreen/sunblock 'sʌnskri:n/'sʌnblɒk 50  
 sunset 'sʌnset 28  
 suntan 'sʌntæn 50  
 superb su:'pɜ:b 43  
 support [help] sə'pɔ:t 56, 98  
 sure ʃɜ: 65  
 surf the web sɜ:f ðə web 54  
 surface 'sɜ:fɪs 6  
 surfing 'sɜ:fɪŋ 50  
 surgeon 'sɜ:dʒən 21, 36  
 surgery [an operation] 'sɜ:dʒəri 21  
 surgery [a place] 'sɜ:dʒəri 36  
 surrounded by sə'raʊndɪd baɪ 28  
 swap (places) swɒp 32  
 sweater 'swetə 22  
 sweets swi:ts 24  
 swerve swɜ:v 30  
 swimmer 'swɪmə 42  
 swimming costume 'swɪmɪŋ 'kɒstju:m 42  
 Swiss swɪs 5  
 switch sth off swɪtʃ 'sʌmθɪŋ ɒf 57  
 switch sth on swɪtʃ 'sʌmθɪŋ ɒn 79  
 Switzerland 'swɪtsəlænd 5  
 syllable 'sɪləbəl 4  
 synonym 'sɪnənɪm 1  
 system 'sɪstəm 33  
 tablet 'tæblət 21  
 take [accept sth] teɪk 81  
 take [remove sth] teɪk 81  
 take [steal] teɪk 55, 81  
 take [write down] teɪk 81  
 take (size 12) teɪk 81  
 take (time) teɪk 59  
 take a break teɪk ə breɪk 81  
 take a course teɪk ə kɔ:s 81  
 take/make a decision teɪk/meɪk ə dɪ'sɪʒən 81  
 take a look teɪk ə lʊk 81

take a photo	teik ə 'fəʊtəʊ	81	that's a shame	ðæts ə 'ʃeɪm	23	totally	'təʊtəli	66, 91
take/have a shower	teik/hæv ə 'ʃaʊə	81	that's all right/okay	ðæts ɔ:l raɪt ə'keɪ	64	touch n, v	tʌtʃ	85
take action	teik 'æksjən	57	that's to say	ðæts tu: seɪ	100	tournament	'tʊənəmənt	43
take/do an exam	teik/du: æn ɪg'zæm	34	that's very kind of you	ðæts 'veri kaɪnd ɒv ju:	64	towards	tə'wɔ:dz	90
take care	teik keə	68	the best/worst thing about ...	ðə best/wɜ:st θɪŋ ə'baʊt	28	toy	tɔɪ	62
take/do exercise	teik/du: 'eksəsaɪz	81	the cold	ðə kəʊld	7	track [music]	træk	45
take over sth	teik 'əʊvə 'sʌmθɪŋ	40	the last time	ðə lɑ:st taɪm	59	track [sport]	træk	42
take part	teik pɑ:t	43	the news	ðə nju:z	51	tractor	'træktə	28
take place	teik pleɪs	46	the other day	ði 'ʌðə deɪ	59	trade	treɪd	41
take sb on	teik 'sʌmbɒdi ɒn	79	the thing is ...	ðə θɪŋ ɪz	95	tradition	trə'dɪʃən	46
take sth back	teik 'sʌmθɪŋ bæk	79	theft	θeft	55	traditional	trə'dɪʃənəl	46, 71
take sth off	teik 'sʌmθɪŋ ɒf	22, 80	there's something wrong with ...	ðeəz 'sʌmθɪŋ rɒŋ wɪð	19	traffic jam	'træfɪk dʒæm	27
take sth up	teik 'sʌmθɪŋ ʌp	40	therefore	'ðeəfɔ: 94	trainers	'treɪnəz	22	
take things/it easy	teik θɪŋz ɪt 'i:zi	81	these days	ði:z deɪz	59	training	'treɪnɪŋ	38
takeaway	'teɪkəweɪ	16	thick [not thin]	θɪk	61	translate (sth into sth)	trænz'leɪt	2, 70, 77
take-off	'teɪkɒf	47	thick fog	θɪk fɒg	7	translation	trænz'leɪʃən	2, 70
talent	'tælənt	11	thief	θi:f	55	translator	trænz'leɪtə	70
talented	'tæləntɪd	11	thin	θɪn	61	travel agent	'trævəl 'eɪdʒənt	73
tall person/tree/building	tɔ:l 'pɜ:sən/tri:'bɪldɪŋ	61	think of (+ -ing)	θɪŋk ɒv	77, 87	treat	tri:t	36
tap	tæp	18, 57	though	ðəʊ	93	tree	tri:	28
taste [flavour]	n, v teɪst	26, 85	thousand	'θaʊzənd	60	trend	trend	41
taste [what you like]	teɪst	45	three quarters	θri:'kwɔ:təz	60	trolley	'trɒli	24, 47
tasty	'teɪsti	26	thriller	'θrɪlə	44	truck	trʌk	29
tax	tæks	56	through	θru:	90	trumpet	'trʌmpɪt	45
taxi rank	'tæksi ræŋk	29	throw sth away	θrəʊ 'sʌmθɪŋ ə'weɪ	24, 57	trumpeter	'trʌmpɪtə	45
teaching	'ti:tʃɪŋ	35	throw sth to/at sb	θrəʊ 'sʌmθɪŋ tu:/æt 'sʌmbɒdi	77	trunk	trʌŋk	8
team	ti:m	43, 96	thumb	θʌm	9	trust	trʌst	11
tear v	teə	19	thunder	'θʌndə	7	try sth on	traɪ 'sʌmθɪŋ ɒn	23
teenager	'ti:n,eɪdʒə	14	thunderstorm	'θʌndəstɔ:m	7	try/do your best	traɪ/du: dʒɔ: best	34
teens	ti:nz	14	tick	tɪk	3	T-shirt	'ti:ʃɜ:t	22, 73
tell + obj + that	tel ðæt	88	tie	taɪ	22	tube	tju:b	63
tell sb a joke	tel 'sʌmbɒdi ə dʒəʊk	74	tiger	'taɪgə	8	tune	tju:n	45
telly	'teli	100	tights	taɪts	22	Turkey	'tɜ:ki	5
temperature	'tempərətʃə	6, 21	tights	taɪts	22	Turkish	'tɜ:kiʃ	5
temple	'tempəl	49	tiles	taɪlz	18	turn sth down [reduce volume]	tɜ:n 'sʌmθɪŋ daʊn	32
tent	tent	42, 86	time (for us) to go/leave (etc.)	taɪm tu: gəʊ/li:v	59	turn sth/sb down [reject]	tɜ:n 'sʌmθɪŋ 'sʌmbɒdi daʊn	80
term	tɜ:m	33	times	taɪmz	60	turn sth off	tɜ:n 'sʌmθɪŋ ɒf	80
terminal (building)	'tɜ:mɪnəl	47	timetable	'taɪm,teɪbəl	33	turn sth on	tɜ:n 'sʌmθɪŋ ɒn	80
terribly sorry	'terəbli 'sɔ:ri	64, 74	tin (of fruit, etc.)	tɪn	63	turn sth up	tɜ:n 'sʌmθɪŋ ʌp	32
terrific	tə'rifɪk	89, 95	tiny	'taɪni	61, 89	turning	'tɜ:nɪŋ	30
terrifying	tə'reɪfɪŋ	89	tip [advice]	tɪp	2, 96	twice	twɑɪs	68
text v	tekst	52	tip [money]	tɪp	2	twin(s)	twɪn	13
texting	'tekstɪŋ	52	tired	'taɪəd	89	twin room	twɪn ru:m	48
Thai	taɪ	5	tired of sth	taɪəd ɒv 'sʌmθɪŋ	77	type v	taɪp	39, 96
Thailand	'taɪlənd	5	tiring	'taɪrɪŋ	89	ugly	'ʌgli	10
thank goodness/God	θæŋk 'gʊdnəs/gʊd	68	tissue	'tiʃu:	62	UK	'ju:'keɪ	5
thank sb (for sth)	θæŋk 'sʌmbɒdi	98	to be honest	tu: bi: 'ɒnɪst	75	UN	'ju:'en	100
thanks (very much)	θæŋks	64	to begin with	tu: bɪ'gɪn wɪð	92	unable	ʌn'eɪbəl	69
that/it depends	ðæt/ɪt dɪ'pendz	76	to some extent	tu: sʌm ɪk'stent	66	unbelievable	ʌnbɪ'li:vəbəl	71
that sort/kind of thing	ðæt sɔ:t/kaɪnd ɒv θɪŋ	76	toast	təʊst	86	uncle	'ʌŋkəl	13
that's a great idea	ðæts ə greɪt aɪ'dɪə	65	toddler	'tɒdlə	14	uncomfortable	ʌn'kʌmfətəbəl	69, 71
that's a pity	ðæts ə 'pɪti	23	toe	təʊ	9	uncountable (noun)	ʌn'kaʊntəbəl	4
			tomato	tə'mə:təʊ	25	under [movement]	'ʌndə	90
			too	tu:	93	under arrest	'ʌndə ə'rest	55
			toothbrush	'tu:θbrʌʃ	73	under one roof	'ʌndə wʌn ru:f	24
			toothpaste	'tu:θpeɪst	73	undergraduate	'ʌndə'grædʒuət	35
			top floor	tɒp flɔ:	17	underneath	'ʌndə'ni:θ	90
			topic	'tɒpɪk	2	undo	ʌn'du:	22

unemployed ˌʌnɪm'plɔɪd 38  
 unemployment ˌʌnɪm'plɔɪmənt 38  
 unfair ʌn'feə 69  
 unfashionable ʌn'fæʃənəbəl 71  
 unforgettable ˌʌnfə'getəbəl 71  
 unfriendly ʌn'frendli 11  
 uniform 'ju:nɒfɔ:m 33  
 United States of America  
   ju:'naɪtɪd steɪts ɒv ə'merɪkə 5  
 unkind ʌn'kaɪnd 11  
 unless ʌn'les 94  
 unlikely ʌn'laɪkli 69  
 unlock ʌn'lɒk 69  
 unlucky ʌn'lʌki 69  
 unnecessary ʌn'nesəsəri 2  
 unpack ʌn'pæk 69  
 unpleasant ʌn'plezənt 11  
 unreasonable ʌn'ri:zənəbəl 71  
 unreliable ˌʌnrɪ'laɪəbəl 11, 71  
 unsociable ʌn'səʊʃəbəl 71  
 unsuccessful ˌʌnsək'sesfəl 35  
 unsuitable ʌn'su:təbəl 71  
 untidy ʌn'taɪdi 2  
 until ʌn'tɪl 59  
 up [further along] ʌp 61  
 up [not in bed] ʌp 28  
 up and down ʌp ænd daʊn 75  
 up to ʌp tu: 46  
 upload ʌp'ləʊd 54  
 upset adj ʌp'set 12  
 upstairs ʌp'steəz 17  
 up-to-date ˌʌptə'deɪt 78  
 urgently 'ɜ:dʒəntli 91  
 use n ju:s 32  
 use v ju:z 32  
 used to ju:st tu: 67  
 useful 'ju:sfəl 71  
 useless 'ju:sləs 71  
 username 'ju:zəneɪm 53  
 utility room ju:'tɪləti ru:m 18  
 valley 'væli 28  
 value 'vælju: 41  
 value for money  
   vælju: fɔ: 'mʌni 20, 27  
 van væn 29  
 variety və'reɪəti 27, 40  
 vase vɑ:z 63  
 vast majority vɑ:st mə'dʒɔrəti 60  
 veal vi:l 25  
 vegetarian ˌvedʒɪ'teəriən 25  
 vehicle 'vi:əkəl 29  
 verb vɜ:b 4  
 vet vet 36, 100  
 via 'vi:ə 30  
 victory 'vɪktəri 43  
 video clip 'vɪdɪəʊ klɪp 54  
 view vju: 17  
 village 'vɪlɪdʒ 28  
 vinegar 'vɪnɪgə 25  
 violence 'vaɪələns 58  
 violent 'vaɪələnt 58  
 violin 'vaɪə'li:n 45  
 violinist ˌvaɪə'lɪnɪst 45  
 virus [computer] 'vaɪrəs 53

visa application form  
   'vi:zə ˌæplɪ'keɪʃən fɔ:m 96  
 vitally important 'vaɪtəli  
   ɪm'pɔ:tənt 74  
 vocational training vəʊ'keɪʃənəl  
   'treɪnɪŋ 33  
 volleyball 'vɒləbɔ:l 50  
 vote vɔ:t 56  
 vowel 'vaʊəl 34  
 wage weɪdʒ 37  
 waist weɪst 9  
 wait and see weɪt ænd si: 76  
 wake (up) weɪk 79  
 wake (sb) up weɪk ʌp 16  
 war wɔ: 58  
 wardrobe 'wɔ:drəʊb 23  
 warn (+ obj + inf) wɔ:n 88  
 warning 'wɔ:nɪŋ 31  
 wash n, v wɒʃ 16, 72  
 washbasin 'wɒʃ,beɪsɪn 18  
 washing [dirty clothes] 'wɒʃɪŋ  
   16  
 waste weɪst 20, 57  
 watch wɒtʃ 85  
 waterfall 'wɔ:təfɔ:l 6  
 wave to somebody  
   weɪv tu: 'sʌmbədi 9  
 waves (in the sea) weɪvz 50  
 wavy 'weɪvi 10  
 way [route] weɪ 30  
 we could ... wi: kəd 65  
 weak wi:k 70  
 weakness 'wi:knəs 70  
 wear weə 33  
 weather forecast  
   'wedə 'fɔ:kəʊst 51  
 webcam 'webkæm 53  
 website 'websaɪt 54  
 wedding 'wedɪŋ 15  
 weekly 'wi:kli 1, 51  
 weigh wei 10, 47  
 weight weɪt 10  
 well aware wel ə'weə 74  
 well done [meat] wel dʌn 48  
 well known wel nəʊn 51  
 west west 6  
 wet wet 7  
 whale weɪl 8  
 What are you up to? wɒt ɑ: ju:  
   ʌp tu: 95  
 What do you do?  
   wɒt du: ju: du: 37  
 What do you do for a living?  
   wɒt du: ju: du: fɔ:r ə 'lɪvɪŋ 37  
 What do you think of/about ...?  
   wɒt du: ju: θɪŋk ɒv/ə'baʊt 66  
 What does he/she look like?  
   wɒt dɔz hi:/ʃi: lʊk laɪk 10  
 What does that involve? wɒt dɔz  
   ðæt ɪn'vɒlv 37  
 What does X mean?  
   wɒt dɔz eks mi:n 32  
 What does X stand for? wɒt dɔz  
   eks stænd fɔ: 100  
 What for? wɒt fɔ: 76  
 what if wɒt ɪf 76  
 What's he/she/it like? wɒts hi:/ʃi:/  
   ɪt laɪk 11

what's more wɒts mɔ: 93  
 What's on? wɒts ɒn 44  
 What's your job? wɒts jɔ: dʒɒb  
   37  
 wheelchair 'wi:l'tʃeə 73  
 whereas weə'ræz 93  
 whether 'wedə 94  
 while [comparing] 'waɪl 93  
 while [during] 'waɪl 92  
 Who's calling? hu:z 'kɔ:lɪŋ 52  
 Why don't we ...? waɪ dəʊnt wi:  
   65  
 Why not? waɪ nɒt 76  
 wide [not narrow] waɪd 61  
 wide awake waɪd ə'weɪk 74  
 wide choice waɪd tʃɔ:s 74  
 wide vocabulary  
   waɪd vɔ:kə'bɔljəri 34, 74  
 widow 'wɪdəʊ 13  
 width wɪθ 61  
 wild (animals) waɪld 8  
 willing 'wɪlɪŋ 34  
 win wɪn 43  
 wind n wɪnd 7  
 windsurfing 'wɪndzɜ:fɪŋ 50  
 windy 'wɪndi 7  
 wing wɪŋ 8  
 winner 'wɪnə 43  
 wish wɪʃ 11  
 won't be long wəʊnt bi: lɒŋ 64  
 wonderful 'wʌndəfəl 89  
 wood wʊd 36  
 wooden 'wʊdən 18, 62  
 woods wʊdz 28  
 work [function] wɜ:k 19, 39  
 work experience  
   wɜ:k ɪk'spɪəriəns 96  
 work on sth wɜ:k ɒn 'sʌmθɪŋ  
   34  
 work out wɜ:k aʊt 42  
 work sth out wɜ:k 'sʌmθɪŋ aʊt  
   60  
 worry about sth 'wʌri ə'baʊt  
   'sʌmθɪŋ 77  
 worth [value] wɜ:θ 55  
 worth (+ noun/-ing) wɜ:θ 49  
 would rather wʊd 'rʌ:ðə 67  
 wow wəʊ 32  
 wrist rɪst 9  
 write down raɪt daʊn 2  
 wrong number rɒŋ 'nʌmbə 52  
 yard jɑ:d 61  
 yawn jɔ:n 9  
 yet jet 93  
 yoga 'jɔ:ɡə 42  
 you (don't) get ... ju: get 27, 28  
 you know ju: nəʊ 76  
 you must be joking ju: mʌst bi:  
   'dʒɔ:kɪŋ 76  
 Yours faithfully/sincerely  
   jɔ:z 'feɪθfəli/ʃɪn'sɪəli 98  
 zero 'ziərəʊ 60  
 zip zɪp 22  
 zoo zu: 8

# How to use the *English Vocabulary in Use* Pre-intermediate CD-ROM to learn vocabulary

Your copy of *English Vocabulary in Use Pre-intermediate* comes with a CD-ROM. You can use the CD-ROM to improve your English vocabulary. These two pages answer some common questions about the CD-ROM.

## What is on the CD-ROM?

The CD-ROM contains

- two practice activities for each unit of the book (200 in total)
- two vocabulary games, *Dune Buggy* and *Word Rowing*
- a test maker
- a record and play-back function
- a dictionary function
- a reference section.

## When should I use the CD-ROM?

You can use the CD-ROM before or after you do a unit in the book. This section will give you some suggestions.

## Using the CD-ROM before you look at a unit in the book

The CD-ROM can help you discover how much vocabulary you already know about a topic. Try this:

- Choose a topic from the *Exercises* menu, for example *Shopping in the Daily Life* section.
- Complete the two exercises. After each exercise, click *Check your answers* to see how many questions you got right. Make a note of any words you found difficult.
- Now go to the relevant unit of the book. Study the notes on the left-hand page. Try to find the words you didn't know from the CD-ROM. Complete the exercises on the right-hand page.
- Finally, return to the CD-ROM. Look at the *My progress* section. Can you improve your score this time? Complete the two exercises again for the same unit.

## Using the CD-ROM after you look at a unit in the book

The CD-ROM can help you to remember words you learnt from the book. This kind of revision is very important if you want to remember vocabulary. Try this:

- When you complete a unit from the book, write the date at the top of the page.
- One week later, go to the CD-ROM and do the two exercises from that unit. How much vocabulary can you remember? Make a note of any words you found difficult or couldn't remember.
- Go back to the unit in the book and look for the words you didn't know. Study the words again.
- Finally, return to the CD-ROM and complete the two exercises again. Did you remember those difficult words?

The CD-ROM can also help you test yourself. You can even personalise the tests to cover the topics that *you* want to practise. Try this:

- When you finish a group of units in the book (for example, the seven units in the *People* section), go to the CD-ROM and make a test on the vocabulary from those units. The CD-ROM will create five test questions from each of those units. For an extra challenge, use the time limit function. If your score is low, look at the units again. Then create a new test and try to improve your score.
- Alternatively, create a test when you have completed the whole book. Choose units at random or concentrate on units that you found difficult.

### Can the CD-ROM help me with my pronunciation?

Yes, it can. The CD-ROM has a record and play-back function which you can use to practise your pronunciation. Try this:

- When you have completed an exercise on the CD-ROM, click the green arrow to hear a model pronunciation of the words or sentences.
- Then click the red *Record your voice* button at the bottom of the screen. Practise saying the word or sentence.
- Now click the green *Play your voice* arrow at the bottom of the screen. Does your pronunciation sound correct? Listen to the model pronunciation again to check.
- Record your voice again if necessary.

### Can I use the CD-ROM for fun?

Yes, of course! We hope you will find all of the exercises fun. However, there are also two games which can help you to practise vocabulary in a fun way.

- In *Dune Buggy*, you drive a car and score points by hitting the correct words. You can choose from ten topics, including food and clothes, but you have to avoid the wrong words in each topic. If you write down your score after each game, you can try to improve it next time.
- In *Word Rowing*, you have to guess words from the clue that you are given. This game can help you to remember what words mean. Write down your score and try to improve it next time.

Both these games are quick and fun. Just playing for five or ten minutes a day can help you to remember more vocabulary. And to make things even more fun, you can have a competition with a friend. Who can score the most points?

### What's in the reference section?

Here you will find a really useful wordlist, with all the key words from the book. You can hear the American English and British English pronunciation of every word and phrase. You can also make notes on this page. All the left-hand book pages are available to help you with the exercises.

### What else can the CD-ROM do?

The CD-ROM also has a dictionary function. You can use it to look up any words that you don't know. You will need an internet connection for this. Also, you can click on any word in the CD-ROM and it will look up the word in the online dictionary.

You can also check your progress at any time using the *Progress* section. This will help you to see which exercises you have completed. It can also show you areas where you need more practice. In those cases, study the left-hand pages again.

Remember you can print out tests, exercises and the answers.

We hope you enjoy using the *English Vocabulary in Use Pre-intermediate* CD-ROM.

# English Vocabulary in Use

Pre-intermediate

Third edition

Do you want to improve your vocabulary quickly? *English Vocabulary in Use* has it all. For English language learners at B1 level, this third edition of the best-selling vocabulary book now offers:

- Fully updated units informed by the English Vocabulary Profile, so you learn the most important words at intermediate level
- New words presented and explained in context
- Lots of opportunities for personalised practice
- A common mistakes feature which helps you avoid frequent errors

[www.cambridge.org/elt/inuse](http://www.cambridge.org/elt/inuse)

**B1** English Profile  
[www.englishprofile.org](http://www.englishprofile.org)

A1 Starter

A2 Elementary

**B1** Pre-intermediate and intermediate

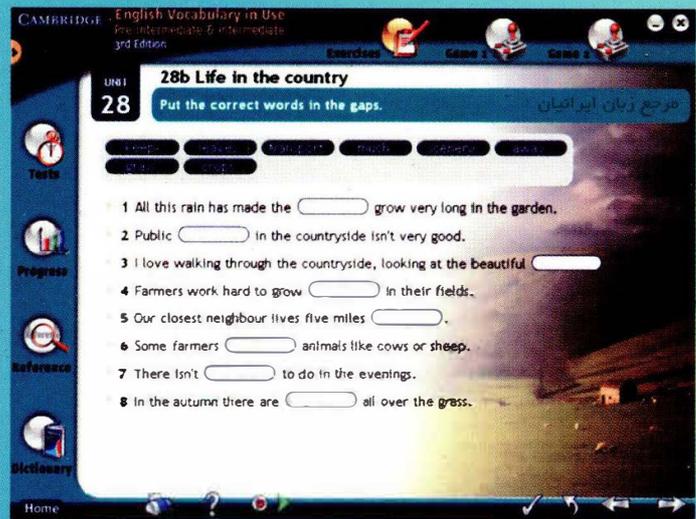
B2 Upper-intermediate

C1 Advanced

مرجع زبان ایرانیان  
[www.irLanguage.com](http://www.irLanguage.com)

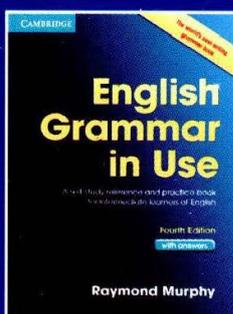
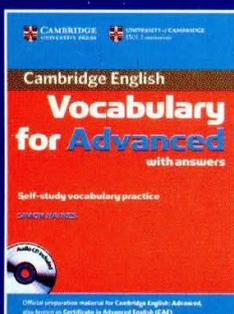
On the CD-ROM:

- Two extra exercises for each unit
- Personalised, printable tests – ideal for exam practice
- Audio recordings for every exercise
- Interactive games for fun vocabulary learning



#### System requirements

For Windows XP, Vista, Windows 7 and Mac OS X 10.4 or higher



#### CAMBRIDGE ENGLISH CORPUS

The Cambridge English Corpus is a multi-billion word collection of written and spoken English. It includes the Cambridge Learner Corpus, a unique bank of exam candidate papers.



Our authors study the Corpus to see how English is really used, and to identify typical learner mistakes. This means that Cambridge materials help students to avoid mistakes, and you can be confident the language taught is useful, natural and fully up to date.

[www.cambridge.org/corpus](http://www.cambridge.org/corpus)

CAMBRIDGE QUALITY GUARANTEE



CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS  
[www.cambridge.org](http://www.cambridge.org)